owner's manual

IBIZA

SEAT
auto emoción

Ibiza FR

Foreword

This owner's manual and the corresponding supplements should be read carefully to familiarise yourself with your vehicle.

Also, the regular care and maintenance and correct handling of the vehicle will contribute to preserve its value.

For safety reasons, note the information concerning accessories, modifications and parts exchange.

If selling the vehicle, give all of the onboard documentation to the new owner as this should be kept with the vehicle.

Contents

The structure of this manual 5

Content 6

Safety First 7

Safe driving 7
- Brief introduction 7
- Proper sitting position for occupants 9
- Pedal area 14
- Stowing luggage 15

Seat belts 16
- Introduction 16
- Why wear seat belts? 18
- Seat belts 22
- Belt tension devices* 25

Airbag system 27
- Brief introduction 27
- Front airbags 30
- Side airbags 33
- Curtain airbags 37
- Deactivating airbags* 40

Child safety 42
- Brief introduction 42
- Child seats 44
- Securing child seats 47

Operating instructions 51

Cockpit 51
- Overview 51
- Instruments 52
- Digital display in the instrument panel 54
- Warning lamps 60

Steering wheel controls* 68
- Audio control from controls on the steering wheel 68

Unlocking and locking 70
- Doors 70
- Central locking* 70
- Keys 76
- Radio frequency remote control 78
- Anti-theft alarm system* 80
- Tailgate 83
- Windows 84
- Sliding/tilting roof* 87

Lights and visibility 90
- Lights 90
- Interior lights 95
- Visibility 96
- Windscreen washers 97
- Windscreen 100
- Rearview mirrors 101

Seats and stowage 104
- The importance of correct seat adjustment 104
- Head restraints 105
- Front seats 107
- Rear seat bench 109
- Stowage compartments 110
- Ashtrays, cigarette lighter and electrical sockets 113
- First-aid kit, warning triangle, fire extinguisher* 116
- Luggage compartment 116

Heating, Ventilation and Air conditioning 119
- Heating and ventilation 119
- Air conditioning* 122
- Climatronic 125
- General notes 128

Driving 130
- Steering 130
- Safety 131
- Ignition lock 132
- Starting and stopping the engine 133
- Manual gearbox 136
- Automatic gearbox* 137
- Handbrake 141
- Cruise control system (CCS)* 142

Tips and Maintenance 147

Intelligent technology 147
- Brakes 147
- Anti-lock brake system and traction control ABS 148
- Electronic stabilisation program (ESP)* 149

Driving and the environment 151
- Running-in 151
- Exhaust gasses purification system 152
- Driving abroad 153
- Trailer towing 158
- Driving economically and with respect for the environment 160

Cleaning and caring for your vehicle 162
General notes 162
Care of the vehicle exterior 163
Care of the vehicle interior 169
Accessories, parts replacement and modifications 171
Accessories and parts 171
Modifications 171
Roof aerial* 172
Mobile telephones and two-way radios 172
Fitting a towing bracket* 174
Checking and refilling levels 176
Refuelling 176
Petrol 177
Diesel 178
Working in the engine compartment 179
Engine oil 182
Coolant 186
Washer fluid and windscreen wiper blades 188
Brake fluid 191
Battery 193
Wheels 195
If and when 201
Vehicle tools, spare wheel 201
Wheel change 204
Tyre repair kit (Tyre-Mobility-System)* 209
Fuses 211
Bulb change 217
Jump-starting 228
Towing and tow-starting 231

Technical Data 235

General notes on the technical data 235
What you should be aware of 235
How are the figures measured? 237
Towing a trailer 238
Wheels 238
Technical Data 240
Checking fluid levels 240
Petrol engine 1.2 44 kW (60 bhp) 241
Petrol engine 1.2 litre 51 kW (69 bhp) 242
Petrol engine 1.4 litre 63 kW (86 bhp) 243
Petrol engine 1.4 litre 55 kW (75 hp). Automatic 245
Petrol engine 1.4 litre 74 kW (100 bhp) 246
Petrol engine 1.6l 77 kW (105 bhp) 247
Petrol engine 1.8l 110 kW (150 bhp) 249
Petrol engine 1.8l 132 kW (180 bhp) 250
Diesel engine 1.4 litre TDI 51 kW (70 bhp) 251
Diesel engine 1.4 litre TDI 59 kW (80 bhp) 252
Diesel engine 1.9 litre TDI 74 kW (100 bhp) ... 254
Diesel engine 1.9 litre TDI 96 kW (131 bhp) ... 255
Diesel engine 1.9 TDI 118 kW 256
Dimensions and capacities 258

Index 259

The structure of this manual

Before reading this manual it must be understood

This manual describes the **vehicle equipment** at the time of publication. Some of the equipment described here will not be available until a later date, or is available only in certain markets.

Due to the fact that this is a general manual for the IBIZA, some of the equipment and functions that are described in this manual are not included in all types or variants of the model; they may be different or be modified depending on the technical requirements and on the market; this should in no way be interpreted as misleading advertising.

Illustrations are intended as a general guide, and may vary from the equipment fitted in your vehicle in some details.

The **direction indications** (left, right, front, rear) appearing in this manual refer to the normal forward working direction of the vehicle except when otherwise indicated.

The **equipment marked with an asterisk*** is fitted as standard only in determined model versions, and are supplied as options only for some versions or model year, or are only offered in certain countries.

® All registered marks are indicated with ®. Even if the copyright symbol does not appear this does not mean that the mark is not copyrighted.

▶ The section is continued on the following page.

■ Indicates the **end of a section**.

WARNING

Texts with this symbol contain safety information. They warn you of serious dangers, possibly involving accident or injury.

Caution

Texts with this symbol draw your attention to a possible risk of damage to your vehicle.

For the sake of the environment

Texts with this symbol refer to points relevant to the protection of the environment.

Note

Texts with this symbol contain additional information of a more general nature. In certain countries there may be different units of measurement than the ones used in this manual. For example, miles and gallons may be used instead of kilometres and litres. ■

Content

This manual is structured to give you the information you need as quickly and clearly as possible. The contents of this Manual are grouped into relatively short **sections** making up **chapters** (e.g. “Air conditioning”). The entire manual is divided into five large:

1. Safety First

Information on the vehicle equipment relating to passive safety such as seat belts, airbags, seats, etc.

2. Controls and equipment

Information about the distribution of controls in the driver position of the vehicle, about the seat adjustment possibilities, how to create a suitable climate in the passenger compartment, etc.

3. Tips and Maintenance

Advice relating to driving, care and maintenance of your vehicle and certain problems which you may solve yourself.

4. Technical Data

Figures, values and dimensions of your vehicle.

5. Alphabetic index

At the end of this manual there is a detailed alphabetical index, this will help you to rapidly find the information you require. ■

Safety First

Safe driving

Brief introduction

Dear SEAT Driver

Safety first!

This chapter contains important information, advice, suggestions and warnings that should be read and followed in the interest of your own safety and the safety of your passengers.

WARNING

- **This manual contains important information concerning vehicle handling both by passengers and the driver. The other booklets in the vehicle wallet also contain further information that you should be aware of for your own safety and for the safety of your passengers.**
- **Ensure that the complete vehicle wallet is always in the vehicle. This is especially important when you lend or sell the vehicle to others.** ■

Safety equipment

The safety equipment is a part of the occupant protection system and can reduce the risk of injury during an accident.

Never “gamble” with your safety and the safety of your passengers. In the event of an accident, the safety equipment could reduce the risk of injury. The following list includes most of the safety equipment in your SEAT:

- Optimised three-point seat belts,
- belt tension limiter for the front and rear side seats,
- belt tension devices for the front seats,
- front airbags,
- side airbags in the front seat backrests,
- curtain airbags,
- “ISOFIX” anchor points for “ISOFIX” child seats on the outer seats in the second row,
- height-adjustable head restraints,
- rear-centre head restraints with in-use position and non-use position,
- adjustable steering column.

The safety equipment mentioned above works together to provide you and your passengers with the best possible protection in accident situations. But this safety equipment cannot help you or your passengers if you or your passengers assume an incorrect sitting position or do not properly adjust or use this equipment. ▶

Therefore, information is provided about why this equipment is so important, how it protects you, what you have to observe when using it and how you and your passengers can achieve the greatest possible benefit from the safety equipment fitted. This manual includes important warnings that you and your passengers should observe in order to reduce the risk of injury.

Safety is everyone's business! ■

Before every trip

The driver bears the responsibility for his passengers and the operational worthiness of the vehicle.

For your own safety and the safety of your passengers, always note the following points before every trip:

- Ensure that the vehicle's lights and turn signals operate flawlessly.
- Check tyre pressure.
- Ensure that all windows provide a clear and good view of the surroundings.
- Secure all baggage ⇒ page 15.
- Make sure that no objects can interfere with the pedals.
- Adjust front seat, head restraint and mirrors properly for your size.
- Ensure that the passenger in the central rear seat always has the head restraint in the correct position for use.
- Instruct passengers to adjust the head restraints according to their height.
- Protect children with appropriate child seats and properly applied seat belts ⇒ page 42.
- Assume the correct sitting position. Instruct your passengers also to assume a proper sitting position ⇒ page 9.
- Always fasten your seat belt correctly before driving off. Instruct your passengers also to fasten their seat belts properly ⇒ page 16. ■

What affects driving safety?

Driving safety is largely determined by your driving style and the personal behaviour of all occupants.

As driver, you are responsible for yourself and your passengers. When your concentration or driving safety is affected, you endanger yourself as well as others on the road ⇒ ⚠, for this reason:

- Do not allow yourself to be distracted from the traffic around you, e.g. by passengers or telephone conversations.
- Never drive when your driving ability is impaired (e.g. by medication, alcohol, drugs).
- Observe traffic laws and speed limits.
- Always reduce your speed as appropriate for road, traffic and weather conditions. ▶

– When travelling long distances, take breaks regularly - at least every two hours.

– If possible, avoid driving when you are tired or are under pressure of time.

WARNING

When driving safety is impaired during a trip, the risk of injury and accidents increases. ■

Proper sitting position for occupants

Proper sitting position for driver

The proper sitting position for the driver is important for safe and relaxed driving.

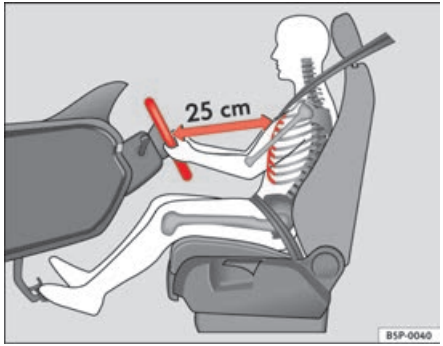

Fig. 1 The proper distance between driver and steering wheel

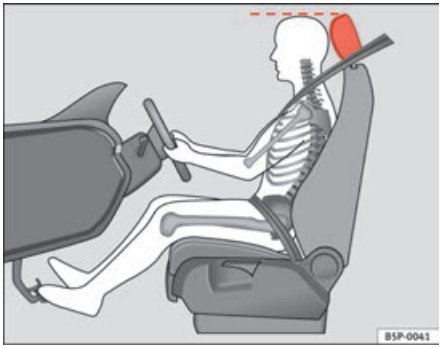

Fig. 2 Proper head restraint position for driver

For your own safety and to reduce the risk of injury in the event of an accident, we recommend the following adjustments for the driver:

– Adjust the steering wheel so that there is a distance of at least 25 cm between the steering wheel and the centre of your chest ⇒ fig. 1.

– Move the driver's seat forwards or backwards so that you are able to press the accelerator, brake and clutch pedals to the floor with your knees still slightly angled ⇒ ⚠.

– Ensure that you can reach the highest point of the steering wheel.

– Adjust the head restraint so that its upper edge is at the same level as the top of your head, or as close as possible to the same level as the top of your head ⇒ fig. 2.

– Move the backrest to an upright position so that your back rests completely against it.

– Fasten your seat belt correctly ⇒ page 16.

– Keep both feet in the foot well so that you have the vehicle under control at all times.

Adjustment of the driver's seat ⇒ page 104.

WARNING

- **An incorrect sitting position of the driver can lead to severe injuries.**
- **Adjust the driver's seat so that there is at least 25 cm distance between the centre of the chest and the hub of the steering wheel ⇒ page 9, fig. 1. If you are sitting nearer than 25 cm, the airbag system cannot protect you properly.**
- **If your physical constitution prevents you from maintaining the minimum distance of 25 cm, contact a qualified workshop. The workshop will help you decide if special specific modifications are necessary.**
- **When driving, always hold the steering wheel with both hands on the outside of the ring at the 9 o'clock and 3 o'clock positions. This reduces the risk of injury when the driver airbag is triggered.**
- **Never hold the steering wheel at the 12 o'clock position, or in any other manner (e.g. in the centre of the steering wheel). In such cases, you may sustain injuries to the arms, hands and head.**
- **To reduce the risk of injury to the driver during sudden braking manoeuvres or an accident, never drive with the backrest tilted far back! The airbag system and seat belts can only provide optimal protection when the backrest is in an upright position and the driver is wearing his or her seat belt properly. The further the backrests are tilted to the rear, the greater the risk of injury due to incorrect positioning of the belt web or the incorrect sitting position!**
- **Adjust the head restraint properly to achieve optimal protection.** ■

Proper sitting position for front passenger

The front passenger must sit at least 25 cm away from the dash panel so that the airbag can provide the greatest possible protection in the event that it is triggered.

For your own safety and to reduce the risk of injury in the event of an accident, we recommend the following adjustments for the front passenger:

– Move the front passenger seat back as far as possible ⇒ ⚠.

– Move the backrest to an upright position so that your back rests completely against it.

– Adjust the head restraint so that its upper edge is at the same level as the top of your head, or as close as possible to the same level as the top of your head ⇒ page 12.

– Keep both feet in the foot well in front of the front passenger seat.

– Fasten your seat belt correctly ⇒ page 16.

The passenger airbag can be deactivated in **exceptional circumstances** ⇒ page 40.

For detailed information on how to adjust the front passenger's seat, see ⇒ page 107.

WARNING

- **An incorrect sitting position of the front passenger can lead to severe injuries.**

WARNING (continued)

- **Adjust the front passenger seat so that there is at least 25 cm between your breastbone and the dash panel. If you are sitting nearer than 25 cm, the airbag system cannot protect you properly.**
- **If your physical constitution prevents you from maintaining the minimum distance of 25 cm, contact a qualified workshop. The workshop will help you decide if special specific modifications are necessary.**
- **Always keep your feet in the foot well when the vehicle is moving; never rest them on the instrument panel, out the window or on the seat. An incorrect sitting position exposes you to an increased risk of injury in the event of a braking manoeuvre or an accident. If the airbag is triggered, you could sustain severe injuries due to an incorrect sitting position.**
- **To reduce the risk of injury to the front passenger during sudden braking manoeuvres or an accident, never travel with the backrest tilted far back! The airbag system and seat belts can only provide optimal protection when the backrest is in an upright position and the front passenger is wearing his or her seat belt properly. The further the backrests are tilted to the rear, the greater the risk of injury due to incorrect positioning of the belt web or the incorrect sitting position!**
- **Adjust the head restraint properly to achieve maximum protection.** ■

Correct sitting position for passengers in the rear seats

Passengers in the rear seats must sit up straight, keep their feet in the footwells, have the rear central head restraint positioned for use and wear their seat belts properly.

To reduce the risk of injury in the event of a sudden braking manoeuvre or an accident, passengers on the rear bench seat must observe the following:

– Adjust the headrest to the correct position ⇒ page 12

– Keep both feet in the foot well in front of the rear seat.

– Fasten your seat belt correctly ⇒ page 16.

– Use an appropriate child restraint system when you take children in the vehicle ⇒ page 42.

WARNING

- **If the passengers on the rear seat are not sitting properly, they could sustain severe injuries.**
- **Adjust the head restraint properly to achieve maximum protection.**
- **Seat belts can only provide optimal protection when backrests are in an upright position and the passengers are wearing their seat belts properly. If passengers on the rear seat are not sitting in an upright position, the risk of injury due to incorrect positioning of the belt web increases.** ■

Correct adjustment of head restraints

Properly adjusted head restraints are an important part of occupant protection and can reduce the risk of injuries in most accident situations.

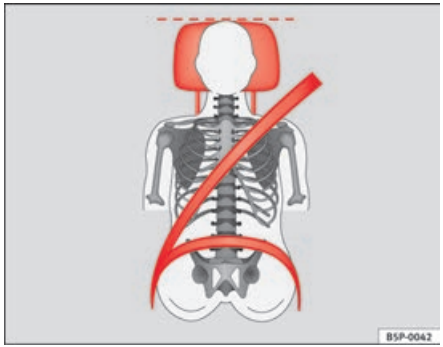

Fig. 3 Properly adjusted head restraint viewed from the front

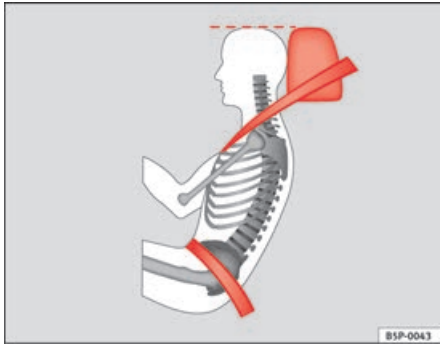

Fig. 4 Properly adjusted head restraint viewed from the side

Adjust the head restraint properly to achieve maximum protection.

– Adjust the head restraint so that its upper edge is at the same level as the top of your head, or as close as possible to the same level as the top of your head and, at the very least, at eye level ⇒ fig. 3 and ⇒ fig. 4.

Adjusting the head restraints ⇒ page 105.

WARNING

- **Travelling with the head restraints removed or improperly adjusted increases the risk of severe injuries.**
- **Incorrectly adjusted head restraints could result in death in the event of a collision or accident.**
- **Incorrectly adjusted head restraints also increase the risk of injury during sudden or unexpected driving or braking manoeuvres.**
- **The head restraints must always be adjusted according to the occupant's size.** ■

Centre rear head restraint*

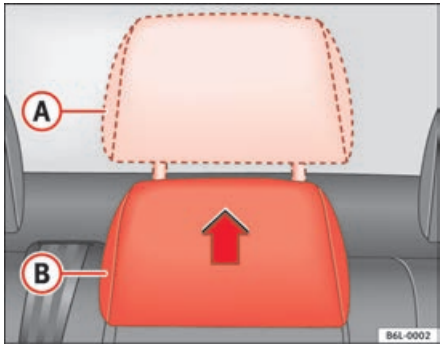

Fig. 5 Adjusting central rear head restraint

The central rear head restraint has 2 positions:

- Raised position or position for use (A) ⇒ fig. 5. In this position, the head restraint is used normally, protecting the occupant of the rear central seat, along with the rear seat belts.
- Rest position (B) ⇒ fig. 5. This position improves the driver's rear visibility.

To fit the head restraint in position for use (A), pull on the edges with both hands in the direction of the arrow. To place it in rest position (B), lower the head restraint.

WARNING

Whenever a passenger is seated in the rear central seat, the head restraint should be placed in the position for use (A).

Note

Note the instructions on the adjustment of the head restraints. ■

Examples of incorrect sitting positions

An incorrect sitting position can lead to severe injuries to occupants.

Seat belts can provide optimal protection only when the belt webs are properly positioned. Incorrect sitting positions substantially reduce the protective function of seat belts and increase the risk of injury due to incorrect belt web position. As the driver, you are responsible for all vehicle occupants, especially children.

– Never permit anyone to assume an incorrect sitting position in the vehicle while travelling ⇒ ⚠.

The following list contains examples of sitting positions that could be dangerous for all occupants. The list is not complete, but we would like to make you aware of this issue.

Therefore, whenever the vehicle is in motion:

- Never stand in the vehicle,
- never stand on the seats,
- never kneel on the seats,
- never tilt your backrest far to the rear,
- never lean against the dash panel,
- never lie on the rear bench,
- never sit on the front edge of a seat,
- never sit sideways,

- never lean out of a window,
- never put your feet out of a window,
- never put your feet on the dash panel,
- never put your feet on the surface of a seat,
- never travel in a foot well ,
- never travel on a seat without wearing the seat belt,
- never carry any person in the luggage compartment.

WARNING

- **Every incorrect sitting position increases the risk of severe injuries.**
- **Sitting in an incorrect position exposes the occupants to severe injuries if airbags deploy, striking an occupant who has assumed an incorrect sitting position.**
- **Before the vehicle moves, assume the proper sitting position and maintain it throughout the trip. Before every trip, instruct your passengers to assume the proper sitting position and to maintain it during the trip** **⇒ page 9, “Proper sitting position for occupants”.** ■

Pedal area

Pedals

The operation and freedom of movement of all pedals must never be impaired by objects or floor mats.

– Ensure that you can always press the accelerator, brake and clutch pedals unimpaired to the floor.

– Ensure that the pedals can return unimpaired to their initial positions.

Use only floor mats that leave the pedal area free and can be securely fastened in the foot well.

If a brake circuit fails, the brake pedal must be free to move further than normal in order to bring the vehicle to a stop.

Wear suitable shoes

Always wear shoes which support your feet properly and give you a good feel for the pedals.

WARNING

- **Restricting pedal operation can lead to critical situations while driving.**
- **Never place objects in the driver foot well. An object could move into the pedal area and impair pedal operation. In the event of a sudden driving or braking manoeuvre, you will not be able to operate the brake, clutch or accelerator pedal. Risk of accident!** ■

Floor mats on the driver side

Only floor mats may be used which can be securely fastened in the foot well and do not impair operation of the pedals.

– Ensure that the floor mats are securely fastened during the trip and do not obstruct the pedals ⇒ ⚠.

Only use floor mats which leave the pedals clear and which are secured to prevent them from slipping. You can obtain suitable floor mats from a qualified dealership. ▶

WARNING

- **If the pedals are obstructed, you could cause an accident. Risk of serious injuries.**
- **Ensure that the floor mats are always securely attached.**
- **Never lay or fit floor mats or other floor coverings over the original floor mats. This would reduce the pedal area and could obstruct the pedals. Risk of accident.** ■

Stowing luggage

Loading the luggage compartment

All luggage and other loose objects must be safely secured in the luggage compartment.

Unsecured objects which shift back and forth could affect safety or driving characteristics of the vehicle by shifting the centre of gravity.

– Distribute the load evenly in the luggage compartment.

– Lay and stow heavy luggage as far forward as possible in the luggage compartment.

– Stow heavy luggage as low as possible in the luggage compartment.

WARNING

- **Loose luggage and other objects in the luggage compartment can cause serious injuries.**

WARNING (continued)

- **Always put objects in the luggage compartment.**
- **During sudden manoeuvres or accidents, loose objects can be thrown forward, injuring vehicle occupants or even to third parties. This increased risk of injury will be further increased if a loose object is struck by an inflating airbag. If this happens, objects can be transformed into "missiles". Risk of fatal injury.**
- **Please note that the centre of gravity may shift when transporting heavy objects; this may affect the vehicle's handling and lead to an accident. Therefore, it is essential to adjust your speed and driving style accordingly, to avoid accidents.**
- **Never exceed the allowed axle loads or allowed maximum weight. If the allowed axle load or the allowed total weight is exceeded, the driving characteristics of the vehicle may change, leading to accidents, injuries and damage to the vehicle.**
- **Never leave your vehicle unattended, especially when the tailgate is open. Children could climb into the luggage compartment closing the door behind them; they will remain trapped without help and there is a mortal risk.**
- **Never allow children to play in or around the vehicle. Close and lock both the tailgate and all the doors when you leave the vehicle. Before you lock the vehicle, make sure that there are no adults or children in the vehicle.**
- **Never transport passengers in the luggage compartment. Every passenger must be properly belted in** **⇒ page 16.**

Note

- Air circulation in the vehicle helps reduce fogging of the windows. Used air escapes through ventilation slits in the side trim of the luggage compartment. Ensure that the ventilation slits are never covered. ■

Seat belts

Introduction

Before driving: remember your seat belt!

Properly worn seat belts can save lives!

In this chapter you will learn why seat belts are so important, how they work and how to properly fasten, adjust and wear them.

– Read and observe all the information as well as the warnings in this chapter.

WARNING

- **If the seat belts are worn incorrectly or not at all, the risk of severe injuries increases.**
- **Properly worn seat belts can reduce severe injuries in the event of sudden braking manoeuvres or accidents. Therefore, you and your passengers should always wear the seat belts properly as long as the vehicle is in motion.**
- **Pregnant women or persons with physical disabilities must also use seat belts. Like all other occupants, these persons can also sustain severe injuries if they are not wearing their seat belts properly.** ■

Number of seats

Your vehicle has **five** passenger places, two individual front seats and three places on the rear seat. Each seat is equipped with a three-point seat belt.

WARNING

- **Never transport more people than there are seats available in the vehicle.**
- **Every occupant in the vehicle must properly fasten and wear the seat belt belonging to his or her seat. Children must be protected with an appropriate child restraint system.** ■

Seat belt warning lamp*

The warning lamp acts as a reminder to the driver to fasten the seat belt.

Before you drive:

– Always fasten your seat belt correctly before driving off.

– Instruct your passengers to fasten their seat belts properly before driving off.

– Protect your children with child restraint systems appropriate for the size and age of the children.

The warning lamp in the combi-instrument lights up if the driver seat belt is not fastened when the ignition is switched on. In addition, an acoustic signal can also be heard for a couple of seconds.

The warning lamp* does not go out until the driver seat belt is fastened while the ignition is switched on. ■

Adjusting the height of the seat belt*

This device enables the position of the seat belts to be adjusted for the height of the wearer at the shoulder area.

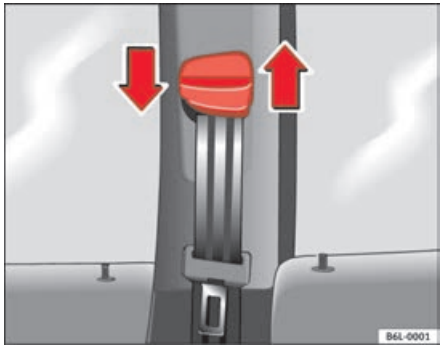

Fig. 6 Location of the belt height adjuster

The seat belt height adjustment on the front seats can be used to ensure that the web of the belt is fitted correctly over the shoulder.

– Press the retractor reel at the top and keep pressed.

– Move the retractor reel up or down to adjust the seat belt.

– Check that the retractor is secure by giving the belt a sharp tug. ■

Why wear seat belts?

Frontal collisions and the laws of physics

In the event of a frontal collision, a large amount of kinetic energy is generated.

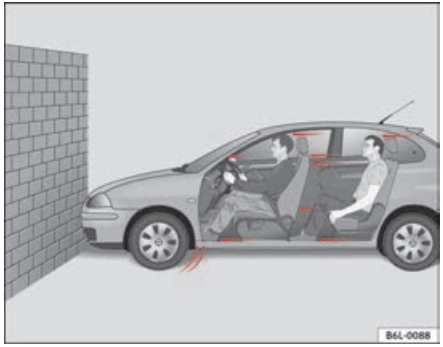

Fig. 7 Vehicle about to hit a wall: the occupants are not wearing seatbelts

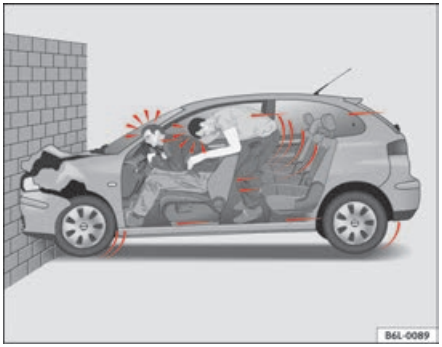

Fig. 8 The vehicle hits the wall: the occupants are not wearing seatbelts

It is easy to explain how the laws of physics work in the case of a head-on collision: When a vehicle starts moving ⇒ fig. 7 there is a certain amount of energy known as “kinetic energy”, both in the vehicle and in the occupants.

The amount of “kinetic energy” depends on the speed of the vehicle and the weight of the vehicle and passengers. The higher the speed and the greater the weight, the more energy there is to be “released” in an accident.

The most significant factor, however, is the speed of the vehicle. If the speed doubles from 25 km/h to 50 km/h, for example, the kinetic energy increases by a factor of four.

Because the passengers in our example are not restrained by seat belts, the entire amount of kinetic energy has to be absorbed at the point of impact ⇒ fig. 8.

Even at speeds of 30 km/h to 50 km/h, the forces acting on bodies in a collision can easily exceed one tonne (1,000 kg). At greater speed these forces are even higher.

Passengers not wearing seat belts are not “attached” to the vehicle. In a frontal collision they will continue to move forward at the speed their vehicle ▶

was travelling just before the impact. This example applies not only to frontal accidents, but also to all accidents and collisions. ■

The danger of not using the seat belt

Many people believe that the occupants can protect themselves with their hands in a minor collision, this is false.

Fig. 9 A driver not wearing a seat belt is thrown forward violently.

Fig. 10 The unbelted rear passenger is thrown forward violently, hitting the driver wearing a seat belt.

Even at low speeds the forces acting on the body in a collision are so great that it is not possible to brace oneself with one's hands. In a frontal collision, unbelted passengers are thrown forward and will make violent contact with the steering wheel, dashboard, windscreen or whatever else is in the way ⇒ fig. 9.

The airbag system is not a substitute for the seat belts. When deployed, airbags provide only additional protection. All occupants (including the driver) must be wearing seat belts properly during the trip. This will reduce the risk of severe injuries in the event of an accident – regardless of whether an airbag is fitted for the seat.

Note that airbags can be triggered only once. To achieve the best possible protection, the seat belt must always be worn properly so that you will be protected in accidents in which no airbag is deployed.

It is also important for the rear passengers to wear seat belts properly, as they could otherwise be thrown forward violently in an accident. Rear passengers who do not use seat belts endanger not only themselves but also the front occupants ⇒ fig. 10. ■

Seat belts protect

Passengers not wearing seat belts risk severe injuries in the event of an accident.

Fig. 11 Driver wearing the seat belt correctly: is restrained by the belt when braking sharply

Properly worn seat belts hold the vehicle occupants in the correct sitting positions and substantially reduce the kinetic energy in the event of an accident. Seat belts also help to prevent uncontrolled movements that could lead to severe injuries. In addition, properly worn seat belts reduce the danger of being thrown from the car.

Passengers wearing their seat belts correctly benefit greatly from the ability of the belts to absorb kinetic energy. The front crumple zones and other passive safety features (such as the airbag system) are also designed to absorb the kinetic energy generated in a collision. Taken together, all these features reduce the forces acting on the occupants and consequently the risk of injury.

Our examples describe frontal collisions. Of course, properly worn seat belts reduce substantially the risk of injury in all other types of accidents. This is why it is so important to fasten seat belts before every trip, even when "just driving around the corner".

Ensure that your passengers wear their seat belts as well. Accident statistics have shown properly worn seat belts to be an effective means of substantially reducing the risk of injury and improving the chances of survival in a serious accident. Furthermore, properly worn seat belts improve the protection provided by airbags in the event of an accident. For this reason, wearing a seat belt is required by law in most countries.

Although your vehicle is equipped with airbags, the seat belts must be fastened and worn. The front airbags, for example, are only triggered in some frontal accidents. The front airbags will not be triggered during minor frontal collisions, minor side collisions, rear collisions, rolls or accidents in which the airbag trigger threshold in the control unit is not exceeded.

Therefore, you should always wear your seat belt and ensure that your passengers have fastened their seat belts properly before you drive off! ■

Safety notes on using seat belts

If seat belts are used correctly, they can reduce the risk of injury in an accident.

– Always wear the seat belt as described in this booklet.

– Ensure that the seat belts can be fastened at all times and are not damaged.

WARNING

- **If the seat belts are worn incorrectly or not at all, the risk of severe injuries increases. The optimal protection from seat belts can be achieved only if you use them properly.**

⚠ WARNING (continued)

- Fasten your seat belt before every trip - even when driving in town. That applies also to your front and rear passengers – danger of injury!
- The seat belt cannot offer its full protection if the belt web is not positioned correctly.
- Never allow two passengers (even children) to share the same seat belt.
- Keep both feet in the foot-well in front of your seat as long as the vehicle is in motion.
- Never unbuckle a seat belt while the vehicle is in motion. Risk of fatal injury.
- The belt webbing must never be twisted while it is being worn.
- The belt webbing should never lie on hard or fragile objects (such as glasses or pens, etc.) because this can cause injuries.
- Do not allow the seat belt to be damaged or jammed, or to rub on any sharp edges.
- Never wear the seat belt under the arm or in any other incorrect position.
- Loose, bulky clothing (such as an overcoat over a jacket) impairs the proper fit and function of the belts, reducing their capacity to protect.
- The slot in the seat belt buckle must not be blocked with paper or other objects, as this can prevent the latch plate from engaging securely.
- Never use seat belt clips, retaining rings or similar instruments to alter the position of the belt webbing.
- Frayed or torn seat belts or damage to the connections, belt retractors or parts of the buckle could cause severe injuries in the event of an accident. Therefore, you must check the condition of all seat belts at regular intervals.
- Seat belts that have been worn in an accident and stretched must be replaced by a qualified workshop. Renewal may be necessary even if there is no apparent damage. The belt anchorage should also be checked.

⚠ WARNING (continued)

- Do not attempt to repair a damaged seat belt yourself. The seat belts must not be removed or modified in any way.
- The belts must be kept clean, otherwise the retractors may not work properly. ■

Seat belts

Seat belt adjustment

The seat belts for the front and rear occupants are locked into position by a latch.

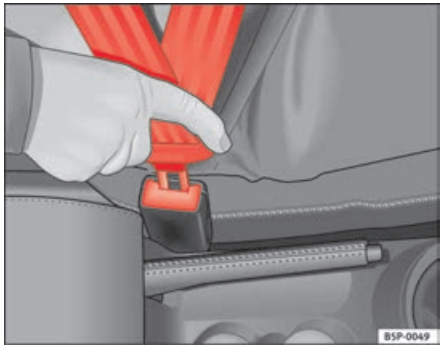

Fig. 12 Belt buckle and latch plate of seat belt

The seat belt cannot offer its full protection if the belt web is not positioned correctly.

– Adjust the seat and head restraint correctly.

– To fasten the belt, take hold of the latch plate and pull it slowly across your chest and lap.

– Insert the latch plate into the buckle for the appropriate seat and push it down until it is securely locked with an audible click ⇒ fig. 12.

– Pull the belt to ensure that the latch plate is securely engaged in the buckle.

The seat belts are equipped with an automatic retractor on the shoulder strap. Full freedom of movement is permitted when the shoulder belt is pulled slowly. However, during sudden braking, during travel in mountains or bends and during acceleration, the automatic retractor on the shoulder belt is locked.

The automatic belt retractors on the front seats are fitted with belt tension devices ⇒ page 25.

WARNING

- **An incorrectly worn seat belt web can cause severe injuries in the event of an accident.**
- **The seat belts offer best protection only when the backrests are in an upright position and the seat belts have been fastened properly.**
- **Never put the latch plate in the buckle of another seat. If you do this, the seat belt will not protect you properly and the risk of injury is increased.**
- **If an occupant is incorrectly belted in, the belt cannot protect him or her properly. An incorrectly positioned belt web can cause extremely severe injuries.** ■

Seat belt position

Seat belts offer their maximum protection only when they are properly positioned.

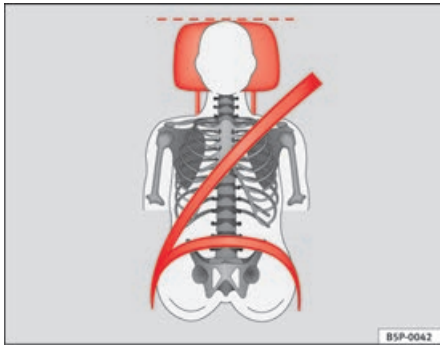

Fig. 13 Correct belt web and head restraint positions, viewed from front

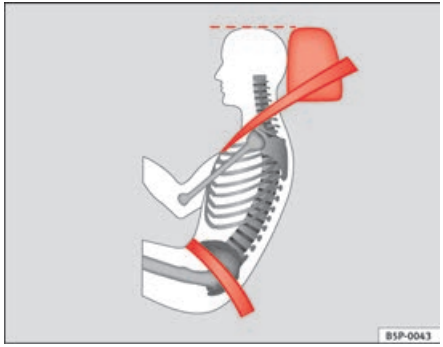

Fig. 14 Correct belt web and head restraint positions, viewed from side

WARNING

- **An incorrectly worn seat belt web can cause severe injuries in the event of an accident.**
- **The shoulder belt must be positioned around the middle of the shoulder. The seat belt must lie flat and snugly on the torso ⇒ fig. 13.**
- **The lap part of the seat belt must lie across the pelvis, never across the stomach. The seat belt must lie flat and snugly on the pelvis ⇒ fig. 14. Pull the belt tight if necessary to take up any slack.**
- **Read and observe the warnings ⇒ page 20.** ■

Pregnant women must also fasten their seat belts properly

The best protection for the unborn child is for the mother to wear the seat belt properly at all times during the pregnancy.

Fig. 15 Positioning seat belts during pregnancy ▶

The seat belt provides maximum protection only when the belt web is properly positioned ⇒ page 23.

– Adjust the front seat and head restraint correctly.

– Holding the latch plate, pull the belt evenly across your chest and as low as possible over the pelvis ⇒ page 23, fig. 15.

– Insert the latch plate into the buckle for the corresponding seat and push it down until it is securely locked with an audible click ⇒ ⚠.

– Pull the belt to ensure that the latch plate is securely engaged in the buckle.

⚠ WARNING

- **An incorrectly worn seat belt web can cause severe injuries in the event of an accident.**
- **For pregnant women, the lap part of the seat belt must lie as low as possible over the pelvis, never across the stomach, and always lie flat so that no pressure is exerted on the abdomen.**
- **Read and observe the warnings ⇒ page 20.** ■

Seat belt release

The seat belt must not be unfastened until the vehicle has come to a standstill.

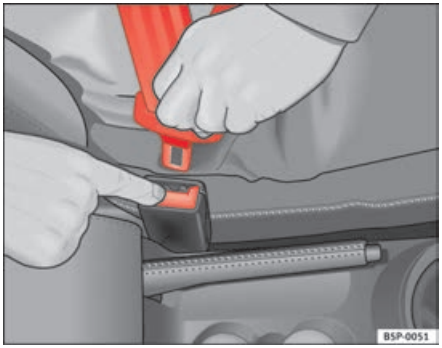

Fig. 16 Removing latch plate from buckle

– Press the red button on the belt buckle ⇒ fig. 16. The latch plate is released and springs out ⇒ ⚠.

– Guide the belt back by hand so that it rolls up easily and the trim is not damaged.

⚠ WARNING

Never unbuckle a seat belt while the vehicle is in motion. If you do, you increase the risk of sustaining severe or fatal injuries. ■

Incorrectly fastened seat belts

Incorrectly worn seat belts can cause severe injuries.

Seat belts can provide optimal protection only if the belt web is properly worn. The seat belts must be fastened exactly in the order described in this chapter. An incorrect sitting position impairs substantially the protection a seat belt offers and can lead to severe or fatal injuries. The risk of severe or fatal injuries is especially increased when a deploying airbag strikes an occupant who has assumed an incorrect sitting position. As driver, you are responsible for all vehicle occupants, especially children. Therefore:

– Never permit anyone to assume an incorrect sitting position in the vehicle while travelling ⇒ ⚠.

WARNING

- **An incorrectly worn seat belt increases the risk of severe injuries.**
- **Before every trip, instruct your passengers to adjust their seat belts properly and to wear them during the trip.**
- **Read and always observe information and warnings concerning the use of seat belts ⇒ page 20.** ■

Belt tension devices*

Function of the belt tension device

During a frontal collision, the seat belts on the front seats are retracted automatically.

The seat belts for the front occupants are equipped with belt tension devices. Sensors will trigger the belt tension devices during severe head-on, lateral and rear collisions only if the seat belt is being worn. This retracts and tightens the seat belts, reducing the forward motion of the occupants.

The belt tension device can be triggered only once.

The belt tension devices will not be triggered in the event of a light frontal, side or rear collision, if the vehicle overturns, or in situations where no large forces act on the front, side or rear of the vehicle.

Note

- If the belt tension devices are triggered, a fine dust is produced. This is normal and is no indication that there was a fire in the vehicle.
- The relevant safety requirements must be observed when the vehicle or components of the system are scrapped. A qualified workshop is familiar with these regulations and will be pleased to pass on the information to you. ■

Service and disposal of belt tension devices

The belt tension devices are components of the seat belts that are installed in the seats of your vehicle. If you work on the belt tension devices or remove and install parts of the system when performing other repair work, the seat belt may be damaged. The consequence may be that, in the event of an accident, the belt tension devices function incorrectly or not at all. ▶

So that the effectiveness of the belt tension device is not reduced and that removed parts do not cause any injuries or environmental pollution, regulations, which are known to the qualified workshops, must be observed.

WARNING

- **If repairs are not carried out by a professional, or if the belt tension devices are used incorrectly, the risk of severe or fatal injuries increases. The belt tension devices may fail to trigger or may trigger in the wrong circumstances.**
- **Never attempt to repair, adjust, remove or install parts of the belt tension devices or seat belts.**
- **The belt tension device and seat belt including its automatic retractor cannot be repaired.**
- **Any work on the belt tension devices and seat belts, including the removal and refitting of system parts in conjunction with other repair work, must be performed by a qualified workshop only.**
- **The belt tension devices will only provide protection for one accident and must be changed it they have been activated.** ■

Airbag system

Brief introduction

Why wear a seat belt and assume the correct sitting position?

For the inflating airbags to achieve the best protection, the seat belt must always be worn properly and the correct sitting position must be assumed.

For your own safety and the safety of the passengers, please ensure the following before you drive:

– Always wear the seat belt properly.

– Adjust the driver seat and the steering wheel correctly.

– Adjust the front passenger seat correctly.

– Adjust the head restraint seat correctly ⇒ page 12.

– Use the correct child restraint system to protect children in your vehicle.

The airbag deploys in fractions of a second and with a high velocity. If you have assumed an incorrect seating position at that moment, you could sustain critical injuries. Therefore, it is essential that all occupants maintain a correct sitting position while travelling.

Braking heavily the moment before an accident may cause an occupant not wearing a seat belt to be thrown forward into the area of the deploying airbag. In this case, the inflating airbag may inflict critical or fatal injuries upon the occupant. This applies particularly to children.

Always maintain the greatest possible distance between yourself and the front airbag. This way, the front airbags can completely deploy when triggered, providing their maximum protection.

The most important factors that intervene when an airbag is triggered are: the type of accident, the angle of collision and the speed of the vehicle.

Whether the airbags are triggered depends primarily on the vehicle deceleration rate resulting from the collision and detected by the control unit. If the vehicle deceleration occurring during the collision and measured by the control unit remains below the specified reference values, the front, side and/or curtain airbag will not be triggered. Take into account that the visible damage in a vehicle following an accident, for whatever reason, are not an indication as to why the airbags were triggered.

WARNING

- **Wearing the seat belt incorrectly or assuming an incorrect sitting position can lead to critical or fatal injuries.**
- **All occupants, including children, who are not properly belted can sustain critical or fatal injuries if the airbag is triggered. You should always transport all children up to 12 years of age on the rear seat. Never transport children in the vehicle if they are not restrained or the restraint system is not appropriate for their age, size or weight.**
- **If you are not wearing a seat belt or if you lean forward or to the side or assume an incorrect sitting position, the risk of injury is increased substantially. This increased risk of injury will be further increased if you are struck by an inflating airbag.**
- **To reduce the risk of injury from an inflating airbag, always wear the seat belt properly.**

WARNING (continued)

- **Always properly adjust the front seats.** ■

The danger of fitting a child seat on the front passenger seat

Rear-facing child seats must never be used on the front passenger seat when the front passenger airbag is enabled.

An enabled front airbag on the front passenger side is potentially a major danger to a child. The front passenger seat is life threatening to a child if you transport the child in a rear-facing child seat. You should always transport all children up to 12 years of age on the rear seat.

If a rear-facing child seat is secured to the front passenger seat, an inflating airbag can strike it with such great force that critical or fatal injuries may result.

Therefore we urgently recommend that you transport children on the rear seats. That is the safest place in the vehicle for children. Alternatively, the front passenger airbag can be disabled with a key-operated switch ⇒ page 40. When transporting children, use a child seat appropriate to the age and size of each child.

For those vehicles that do not include a key lock switch to turn the airbag off, an Authorised Service Centre must be consulted.

WARNING

- **If a child seat is secured to the front passenger seat, the risk to the child of sustaining critical or fatal injuries in the event of an accident increases.**
- **Never secure a rear-facing child seat to the front passenger seat if the front passenger airbag is enabled. The child can suffer critical or fatal injuries when the front passenger airbag is triggered.**

WARNING (continued)

- **An inflating front passenger airbag can strike the rear-facing child seat and hurl it with great force against the door, the roof or the backrest.**
- **If, under special circumstances, it should be necessary to transport a child in a rear-facing child seat on the front passenger seat, it is absolutely essential that you observe the following safety measures:**
  - **Disable the front passenger airbag ⇒ page 40, “Deactivating airbags*”.**
  - **The child seat must be approved by the child seat manufacturer for use on a front passenger seat with front or side airbag.**
  - **Follow the installation instructions of the child seat manufacturer and absolutely observe all warnings**
  - **Before properly installing the child seat, push the front passenger seat all the way to the rear so that the greatest possible distance to the front passenger airbag is ensured.**
  - **Ensure that no objects prevent the front passenger seat from being pushed completely back.**
  - **The backrest of the front passenger seat must be in an upright position.** ■

Warning lamp for airbag and belt tension device system

This warning lamp monitors the airbag and belt tension device system.

The warning lamp monitors all airbags and belt tension devices in the vehicle, including control units and wiring connections. ▶

Monitoring of airbag and belt tension device system

The functionality of the airbag and belt tension device system is constantly monitored electronically. The warning lamp will light up for a few seconds every time the ignition is switched on (self-diagnosis).

The system must be checked when the warning lamp :

- does not come on when the ignition is switched on,
- does not go out about 4 seconds after the ignition is switched on,
- goes out and then comes on again after the ignition is switched on,
- or if it comes on or flickers while the car is moving.

In the event of a malfunction, the warning lamp remains on continuously. Have the airbag system inspected immediately by a qualified workshop.

If any of the airbags are de-activated by the Authorised Service Centre, the indicator lights for several seconds more after the verification and will turn off if there is no fault.

WARNING

- **If there is a malfunction, the airbag and belt tension device system cannot properly perform its protective function.**
- **If a malfunction should occur, have the system checked immediately by a qualified workshop. Otherwise there is a risk that, in the event of an accident, the airbag system and belt tension devices may not be triggered, or may not be triggered correctly.** ■

Repair, care and disposal of the airbags

The parts of the airbag system are installed in various places in your vehicle. If you work on the airbag system or remove and install parts of the system when performing other repair work, parts of the airbag system may be damaged. The consequence may be that, in the event of an accident, the airbag inflates incorrectly or does not inflate at all.

The relevant safety requirements must be observed when the vehicle or components of the airbag are **scrapped**. The specialist workshops and the Vehicle disposal centres are familiar with these requirements.

WARNING

- **If repairs are not carried out by a professional, or if the airbags are used incorrectly, the risk of severe or fatal injuries is increased. The airbags may fail to inflate, or could inflate in the wrong circumstances.**
- **Do not cover or stick anything on the steering wheel hub or the soft plastic surface of the airbag unit on the passenger side of the dashboard, and do not obstruct or modify them in any way.**
- **It is important not to attach any objects such as cup holders or telephone mountings to the surfaces covering the airbag units.**
- **To clean the steering wheel or dash panel, you may use only a dry cloth or one moistened with water. Never clean the dash panel and surface of the airbag module with cleansers containing solvents. Solvents cause the surface to become porous. If the airbag inflates, disintegrating plastic parts can cause substantial injuries.**
- **Never attempt to repair, adjust, remove or install parts of the airbag system.**
- **Any work on the airbag system or removal and installation of the airbag components for other repairs (such as repairs to the steering wheel) should be performed only by a qualified workshop. Qualified workshops have the necessary tools, repair information and qualified personnel.**
- **We urgently recommend that you go to a qualified workshop for all work on the airbag system.**
- **Never attempt to alter the front bumper or the body.**
- **The airbags provide protection for one accident only, if they have been deployed they must be replaced.** ■

Front airbags

Description of front airbags

The airbag system is not a substitute for the seat belts.

Fig. 17 Driver airbag located in steering wheel

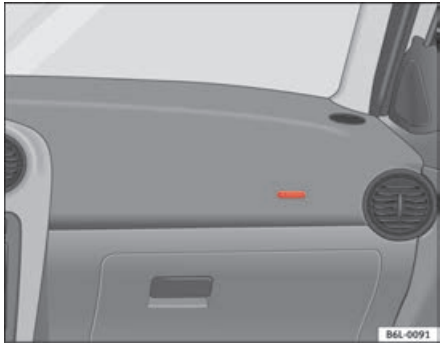

Fig. 18 Front passenger airbag located in dash panel

The front airbag for the driver is located in the steering wheel ⇒ fig. 17 and the airbag for the front passenger is located in the dash panel ⇒ fig. 18. Airbags are identified by the text “AIRBAG”.

In conjunction with the seat belts, the front airbag system gives the front occupants additional protection for the head and chest in the event of a severe frontal collision ⇒ page 33, “Safety notes on front airbag system”.

In addition to their normal function of restraining the occupants, the seat belts also hold the driver and front passenger in a position where the airbags can provide maximum protection in a frontal collision.

The airbag system is not a substitute for seat belts, but is an integral part of the vehicle's overall passive safety system. Please bear in mind that the airbag system can only work effectively when the occupants are wearing their seat belts correctly and have adjusted the head restraints properly. For this reason, it is most important to wear the seat belts at all times, not only because this is required by law in most countries, but also for your safety

The main parts of the front airbag system are:

- an electronic control and monitoring system (control unit),
- the two front airbags (airbag with gas generator) for the driver and front passenger,
- a warning lamp in the dash panel insert ⇒ page 28.

The functionality of the airbag system is monitored electronically. The airbag warning lamp will light up for a few seconds every time the ignition is switched on (self-diagnosis).

There is a fault in the system if the warning lamp

- does not come on when the ignition is switched on ⇒ page 28,
- does not go out about 4 seconds after the ignition is switched on,
- goes out and then comes on again after the ignition is switched on,
- or if it comes on or flickers while the car is moving.

The front airbag system will not be triggered if:

- if the ignition is switched off,
- during a minor frontal collision,
- during a minor side collision,
- during a rear-end collision,
- or if the vehicle rolls.

WARNING

- **The seat belts and airbags can only provide maximum protection if the occupants are seated correctly ⇒ page 9, "Proper sitting position for occupants".**
- **If a fault should occur in the airbag system, have the system checked immediately by a qualified workshop. Otherwise there is a danger that during a frontal collision, the system may fail to trigger, or not trigger correctly.** ■

Function of front airbags

Inflated airbags reduce the risk of head or chest injury.

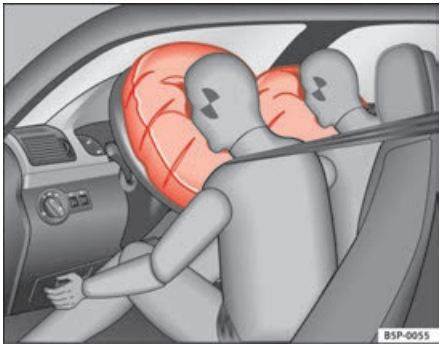

Fig. 19 Inflated front airbags

The airbag system is designed so that the airbags for the driver and front passenger are triggered in a severe frontal collision.

In certain types of accident the front, curtain and side airbags may be triggered together.

When the system is triggered, the airbags fill with a propellant gas and deploy in front of the driver and front passenger ⇒ fig. 19. The fully deployed airbags cushion the forward movement of the front occupants and help to reduce the risk of injury to the head and the upper part of the body.

The special design of the airbag allows the controlled escape of the propellant gas when an occupant puts pressure on the bag. Thus, the head and chest are surrounded and protected by the airbag. Once the impact has been absorbed, the airbag deflates sufficiently for the front occupants to see forward.

In order to provide the desired extra protection in an accident, the airbags have to deploy extremely rapidly (within fractions of a second). A fine dust may develop when the airbag deploys. This is normal and is no indication that there was a fire in the vehicle. ■

The function of the airbag covers if the airbags are triggered

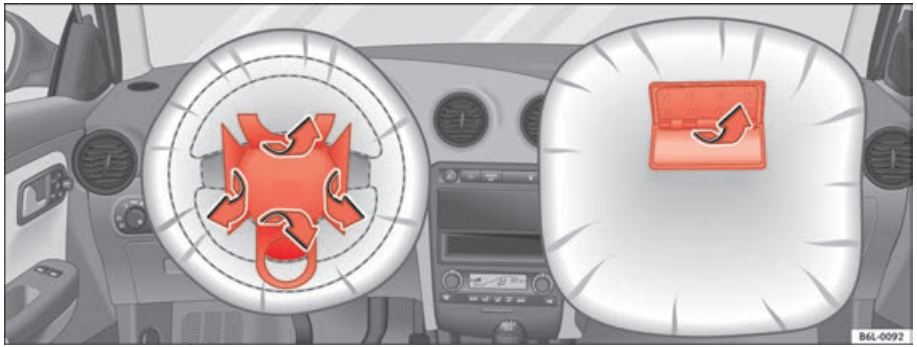

Fig. 20 Airbag covers reacting when the airbags are triggered

The airbag covers fold out of the steering wheel or dash panel when the driver and front passenger airbags deploy ⇒ fig. 20. The airbag covers remain connected to the steering wheel or the dash panel. ■

Safety notes on front airbag system

If you use airbags correctly, they can considerably reduce the risk of injury in many kinds of accident.

WARNING

- **It is important for the driver and front passenger to maintain a distance of at least 25 cm from the steering wheel or dash panel. If the minimum distance is not observed then the airbags do not correctly protect the vehicle occupants; risk of fatal injuries! In addition, the front seats and head restraints must always be positioned correctly for the height of the occupant.**
- **If you are not wearing a seat belt or if you lean forward or to the side or assume an incorrect sitting position, the risk of injury is increased substantially. This increased risk of injury will be further increased if you are struck by an inflating airbag.**
- **Never let a child travel on the front seat without an appropriate restraint system. If the airbag is triggered in an accident, children can sustain serious or fatal injuries from the airbag as it inflates ⇒ page 42, “Child safety”.**
- **Occupants sitting in the front of the vehicle must never carry any objects or pets in the deployment space between them and the airbags, or allow children or other passengers to travel in this position.**
- **The airbags provide protection for one accident only, if they have been deployed they must be replaced.**
- **It is also important not to attach any objects such as cup holders or telephone mountings to the surfaces covering the airbag units.**
- **Do not attempt to modify components of the airbag system in any way.** ■

Side airbags

Description of side airbags

The airbag system is not a substitute for the seat belts.

Fig. 21 Side airbag in driver seat

The side airbags are located in the driver seat and front passenger seat backrests ⇒ fig. 21. The locations are identified by the text “AIRBAG” in the upper region of the backrests.

In conjunction with the seat belts, the side airbag system gives the front seat occupants additional protection for the upper body in the event of a severe side collision ⇒ page 36, “Safety notes on the operation of the side airbag system”.

In a side collision the side airbags reduce the risk of injury to passengers on the front seats to the areas of the body facing the impact. In addition to their normal function of protecting the occupants in a collision, the seat belts also hold the passengers on the front seats in a position where the side airbags can provide maximum protection. ▶

The airbag system is not a substitute for seat belts, but is an integral part of the vehicle's overall passive safety system. Please bear in mind that the airbag system can only work effectively when the occupants are wearing their seat belts. For this reason, it is most important to wear the seat belts at all times, not only because this is required by law in most countries, but also for your safety.

The side airbag system will not be triggered

- if the ignition is switched off,
- during a minor side collision,
- during a minor frontal collision,
- during a rear-end collision,
- or if the vehicle rolls.

The main parts of the airbag system are

- an electronic control and monitoring system (control unit),
- the side airbags in the sides of the backrests of the front seats,
- a warning lamp in the dash panel insert ⇒ page 28.

The functionality of the airbag system is monitored electronically. The airbag warning lamp will light up for approx. 4 seconds every time the ignition is switched on (self-diagnosis).

WARNING

- **In a side-on collision, the side airbags will not work, if the sensors do not correctly measure the pressure increase on the interior of the doors, due to air escaping through the areas with holes or openings in the door panel.**
- **Never drive the vehicle if the interior panels have been removed.**
- **Never drive if the interior door panels have been removed or if the panels have not been correctly fitted.**

WARNING (continued)

- **Never drive the vehicle if the loudspeakers in the door panels have been removed, unless the holes left by the loudspeakers have been correctly closed.**
- **Always check that the openings are closed or covered if loudspeakers or other equipment are fitted in the interior door panels.**
- **Any work carried out to the doors should be made in a qualified authorised workshop.**
- **The seat belts and airbags can only provide maximum protection if the occupants are seated correctly ⇒ page 9, “Proper sitting position for occupants”.**
- **If a fault should occur in the airbag system, have the system checked immediately by a qualified workshop. Otherwise there is a danger that during a side collision, the system may fail to trigger, or not trigger correctly.** ■

Function of side airbags

Inflated airbags can reduce the risk of head or chest injury in many side impact collisions.

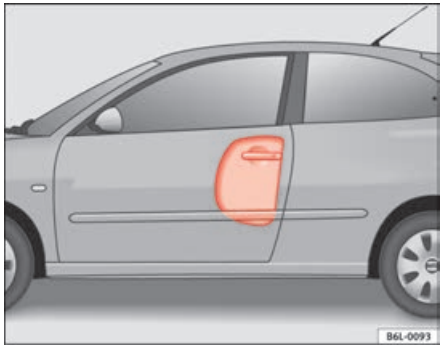

Fig. 22 Inflated side airbag on left side of vehicle

In some **side collisions** the side airbag is triggered on the impact side of the vehicle ⇒ fig. 22.

In certain types of accident the front, curtain and side airbags may be triggered together.

When the system is triggered, the airbag is filled with propellant gas.

In order to provide the desired extra protection in an accident, the airbags have to deploy extremely rapidly (within fractions of a second). A fine dust may develop when the airbag deploys. This is normal and is no indication that there was a fire in the vehicle.

The fully deployed airbags cushion the movement of the occupants of the front seats and help to reduce the risk of injury to the upper body.

The special design of the airbag allows the controlled escape of the propellant gas when an occupant puts pressure on the bag. Thus, the head and chest are surrounded and protected by the airbag. ■

Safety notes on the operation of the side airbag system

If airbags are used correctly, they can considerably reduce the risk of injury in side impact collisions.

WARNING

- If you do not wear a seat belt, if you lean forward, or are not seated correctly while the vehicle is in motion, you are at greater risk of injury should the side airbag system be triggered in an accident.
- In order for the side airbags to provide their maximum protection, the prescribed sitting position must always be maintained with seat belts fastened while travelling.
- Occupants of the outer seats must never carry any objects or pets in the deployment space between them and the airbags, or allow children or other passengers to travel in this position. It is also important not to attach any accessories (such as cup holders) to the doors. This would impair the protection offered by the side airbags.
- The built-in coat hooks should be used only for lightweight clothing. Do not leave any heavy or sharp-edged objects in the pockets.
- Great forces, such as hard blows or kicks, must not be exerted upon the backrest bolster because the system may be damaged. In this case the side airbags would not be triggered.
- Under no circumstances should protective covers be fitted over the driver seat or front passenger seat unless the covers have been expressly approved for use in your vehicle. Because the airbag deploys from the side of the backrest, the use of conventional seat covers would obstruct the side airbag, seriously reducing the airbag's effectiveness.
- Any damage to the original seat upholstery or around the seams of the side airbag units must be repaired immediately by a qualified workshop.
- The airbags provide protection for one accident only, if they have been deployed they must be replaced.

WARNING (continued)

- When children assume an incorrect sitting position, they expose themselves to an increased risk of injury in the event of an accident. This is particularly the case if the child is travelling on the front passenger seat and the airbag system is triggered in an accident; this could have critical consequences including serious injury or death ⇒ page 42, “Child safety”.
- Any work on the side airbag system or removal and installation of the airbag components for other repairs (such as removal of the front seat) should only be performed by a qualified workshop. Otherwise, a fault may be introduced into the operation of the airbag system.
- Do not attempt to modify components of the airbag system in any way.
- The side and head airbags are managed through sensors located in the interior of the front doors. To ensure the correct functioning of the side and head airbags neither the doors nor the door panels should be modified in any way (e.g. fitting loudspeakers). If the front door is damaged in any way, this may affect the correct working of the system. All work carried out on the front door must be made in a qualified workshop. ■

Curtain airbags

Description of curtain airbags

The airbag system is not a substitute for the seat belts.

Fig. 23 Location of left curtain airbag

The curtain airbags are located on both sides in the interior above the doors ⇒ fig. 23 and are identified with the text “AIRBAG”.

In conjunction with the seat belts, the curtain airbag system gives the occupants additional protection for the head and upper body in the event of a severe side collision ⇒ page 38, “Safety notes on the operation of the curtain airbag system”.

The airbag system is not a substitute for seat belts, but is an integral part of the vehicle's overall passive safety system. Please bear in mind that the airbag system can only work effectively when the occupants are wearing their seat belts correctly and have adjusted the head restraints properly. For this reason, it is most important to wear the seat belts at all times, not only because this is required by law in most countries, but also for your safety

The main parts of the curtain airbag system are:

- an electronic control and monitoring system (control unit),
- the curtain airbags (airbags with gas generator) for the driver, front passenger and passengers on the rear seats,
- a warning lamp in the dash panel insert ⇒ page 28.

The functionality of the airbag system is monitored electronically.

The curtain airbag system will not be triggered

- if the ignition is switched off,
- during a frontal collision,
- during a rear-end collision,

- if the vehicle rolls,
- or during a minor frontal collision.

WARNING

If a fault should occur in the airbag system, have the system checked immediately by a qualified workshop. Otherwise there is a danger that during a collision, the system may fail to trigger, or not trigger correctly. ■

Function of curtain airbags

Fully inflated airbags reduce the risk of head or chest injury in a side collision.

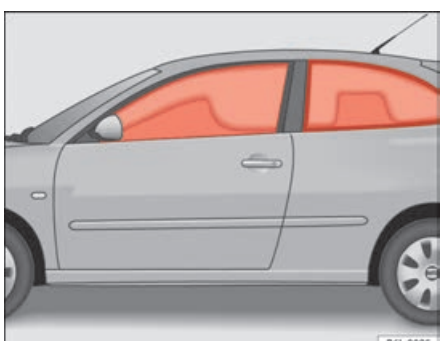

Fig. 24 Deployed curtain airbags

During some **side collisions** the curtain airbag is triggered on the impact side of the vehicle ⇒ fig. 24.

In certain types of accident the front, side and curtain airbags may be triggered together.

When the system is triggered, the airbag is filled with propellant gas. In the process, the curtain bag covers the side windows and door pillars.

In order to provide the desired extra protection in an accident, the airbags have to deploy extremely rapidly (within fractions of a second). A fine dust may develop when the airbag deploys. This is normal and is no indication that there was a fire in the vehicle.

The fully deployed airbags cushion the movement of the front occupants and help to reduce the risk of injury to the upper body.

The special design of the airbag allows the controlled escape of the propellant gas when an occupant puts pressure on the bag. Thus, the head and chest are surrounded and protected by the airbag. ■

Safety notes on the operation of the curtain airbag system

If you use airbags correctly, they can considerably reduce the risk of injury in many kinds of accident.

WARNING

- **In order for the side airbags to provide their maximum protection, the prescribed sitting position must always be maintained with seat belts fastened while travelling.**
- **For safety reasons, the head air bag must be disconnected in those vehicles fitted with a passenger compartment separation screen. See an Authorised Service Centre to make this adjustment.**
- **There must be no other persons, animals or objects between the occupants of the outer seats and the deployment space of the curtain airbags so that the curtain airbag can deploy without restriction and provide the** ▶

⚠ **WARNING (continued)**

greatest possible protection. Therefore, sun blinds which have not been expressly approved for use in your vehicle may not be attached to the side windows.

- **The built-in coat hooks should be used only for lightweight clothing. Do not leave any heavy or sharp-edged objects in the pockets. When using the coat hooks, do not hang the clothes on coat hangers.**
- **The airbags provide protection for one accident only, if they have been deployed they must be replaced.**
- **Any work on the curtain airbag system or removal and installation of the airbag components for other repairs (such as removal of the roof lining) should only be performed by a qualified workshop. Otherwise, a fault may be introduced into the operation of the airbag system.**
- **Do not attempt to modify components of the airbag system in any way.**
- **The side and head airbags are managed through sensors located in the interior of the front doors. To ensure the correct functioning of the side and head airbags neither the doors nor the door panels should be modified in any way (e.g. fitting loudspeakers). If the front door is damaged in any way, this may affect the correct working of the system. All work carried out on the front door must be made in a qualified workshop.** ■

Deactivating airbags*

Disabling front passenger airbag

If you fit a rear-facing child seat to the front passenger seat, the front passenger airbag must be de-activated.

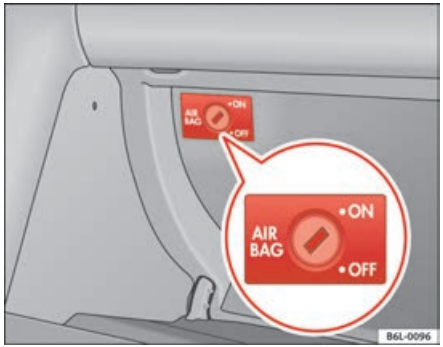

Fig. 25 In the glove compartment: switch for enabling and disabling front passenger airbag

Fig. 26 Warning lamp for deactivated passenger airbag in centre console

When the passenger airbag is **deactivated**, this means that only the frontal and side airbags are deactivated. All the other airbags in the vehicle remain functional.

Disabling front passenger airbag

– Switch off ignition.

– Turn the ignition switch in the key operated switch in the glove box to the position **OFF** ⇒ fig. 25.

– Check that the warning lamp “AIRBAG OFF” in the dash panel ⇒ fig. 26 remains lit ⇒ ⚠ when the ignition is switched on.

Enabling front passenger airbag

– Switch off ignition.

– Turn the ignition switch in the key-operated switch in the glove box to the position **ON** ⇒ fig. 25.

– Check that the warning lamp “AIRBAG OFF” in the dash panel does ⇒ page 40, fig. 26 *not* light up when the ignition is switched on ⇒ ⚠.

⚠ WARNING

- **The driver is responsible for the proper position of the key-operated switch.**
- **You should deactivate the front passenger airbag only if you have to use a rear-facing child seat in exceptional cases. ⇒ page 42, “Child safety”.**
- **Never install a child seat facing backwards (or rear-facing) on the front passenger seat unless the front passenger airbag has been disabled. This represents a risk of fatal injuries to the child! However, if it is necessary in exceptional circumstances to transport a child in a rear-facing child seat on the front passenger seat, you must always disable the front passenger airbag.**
- **As soon as the child seat is no longer needed on the front passenger seat, enable the front passenger airbag again.**
- **Only deactivate the passenger airbag when the ignition is off, otherwise a fault may occur in the airbag system, this will create a danger that in case of an accident, the airbag does not deploy properly or does not deploy at all.**
- **When the passenger airbag is deactivated, if the warning lamp AIRBAG OFF is not continuously lit up when the front passenger airbag is disabled, there may be a fault in the airbag system:**
  - **Have the airbag system inspected immediately by a qualified workshop.**
  - **Do not use a child seat on the front passenger seat! The front passenger airbag could be triggered despite the fact that there is a fault in the system and, as a result, a child could sustain serious or fatal injuries.**

⚠ WARNING (continued)

  - **It is not certain whether the front passenger airbag will deploy during an accident! Inform your passengers of this.**
- **When using the ignition key to activate / deactivate the passenger frontal airbag, only the passenger frontal and side airbag will be activated/deactivated. The curtain airbag on the passenger side will remain active.** ■

Child safety

Brief introduction

Introduction

Statistics show that children are generally safer on the rear seat than on the front passenger seat.

We recommend that children under 12 years of age be transported on the rear seats. Children travelling on the rear seat must use a child restraint system or the seat belts provided, depending on their age, height and weight. For safety reasons, the child restraint system should be installed in the centre of the rear seat or behind the front passenger's seat.

The physical principles involved and the forces acting in a collision apply to children just as much as adults ⇒ page 18, “Why wear seat belts?”. But unlike adults, children do not have fully developed muscle and bone structures. This means that children are subject to a greater risk of injury.

To reduce this risk, children must always use special child restraint systems when travelling in the vehicle.

We recommend the use of child safety products from the SEAT Genuine Accessories Program including systems for all ages made by “Peke”[1].

These systems have been especially designed and approved, complying with the ECE-R44. regulation.

Follow the manufacturer's instructions and observe any statutory requirements when installing and using child seats. Always read and observe ⇒ page 43, “Safety notes on using child seats”.

We recommend that you include the manufacturer's directions for child seat use in the vehicle wallet and always keep them in the vehicle. ■

[1] Not for all countries

Safety notes on using child seats

Proper use of child seats substantially reduces the risk of injury in an accident!

As the driver, you are responsible for any children you transport in your vehicle.

– Protect your children by properly using appropriate child seats ⇒ page 44.

– Always ensure that the belt webbing is properly positioned according to the instructions provided by the manufacturer of the child seat.

– When travelling, do not allow children to distract you from traffic.

– Take breaks regularly during long trips. Take a break at least every two hours.

WARNING

- **Never install a child seat facing backwards (or rear-facing) on the front passenger seat unless the front passenger airbag has been disabled. This represents a risk of fatal injuries to the child! However, if it is necessary, in exceptional cases, to transport a child in the front passenger seat, the front passenger airbag must always be disabled ⇒ page 40, "Deactivating airbags*". If the passenger seat has a height adjustment option, move it to the highest position.**
- **For those vehicles that do not include a key lock switch to turn the airbag off, an Authorised Service Centre must be consulted.**
- **All passengers, especially children, must assume the proper sitting position and be properly belted in while travelling.**

WARNING (continued)

- **Never hold children or babies on your lap, this can result in potentially fatal injuries to the child!**
- **Never allow a child to be transported in a vehicle without being properly secured, or to stand up or kneel on a seat while travelling. In an accident, the child could be flung through the vehicle, causing possibly fatal injuries to themselves and other occupants.**
- **If children assume an improper sitting position when the car is moving, they expose themselves to greater risk of injury during a sudden braking manoeuvre or in an accident. This is particularly the case if the child is travelling on the front passenger seat and the airbag system is triggered in an accident; this could have consequences including serious injury or death.**
- **A suitable child seat can protect your child!**
- **Never leave a child unsupervised in a child seat or alone in the vehicle.**
- **Depending on weather conditions, it may become extremely hot or cold inside the vehicle. This can be fatal.**
- **Children who are less than 1.5 metres tall must not wear a normal seat belt without a child restraint system, as this could cause injuries to the abdominal and neck areas during a sudden braking manoeuvre or in an accident.**
- **Do not allow the belt webbing to become twisted or jammed, or to rub on any sharp edges.**
- **Incorrectly worn seat belts can cause injuries even in a minor collision or sudden braking manoeuvres.**
- **The seat belt provides maximum protection only when the belt web is properly positioned ⇒ page 22, "Seat belts".**
- **Only one child may occupy a child seat ⇒ page 44, "Child seats".** ■

Child seats

Categorisation of child seats into groups

Use only child seats that are officially approved and suitable for the child.

Child seats are subject to the regulation ECE-R 44. ECE-R means: Economic Commission for Europe Regulation

The child seats are grouped into 5 categories:

Group 0: up to 10 kg

Group 0+: up to 13 kg

Group 1: from 9 to 18 kg

Group 2: from 15 to 25 kg

Group 3: from 22 to 36 kg

Child seats that have been tested and approved under the ECE R 44 standard bear the test mark on the seat (the letter E in a circle with the test number below it). ■

Group 0 and 0+ child seats

A suitable child seat and a correctly adjusted seat belt can help to protect your child.

Fig. 27 A group 0 rear-facing child seat fitted on the rear seat.

Group 0: For babies from about 9 months old and 10 kg in weight the most suitable seats are those appearing in the illustration ⇒ fig. 27.

Group 0+: For babies from about 18 months old and 13 kg in weight the most suitable seats are those appearing in the illustration ⇒ fig. 27.

Follow the manufacturer's instructions and observe any statutory requirements when installing and using child seats.

We recommend that you include the manufacturer's directions for child seat use in the vehicle wallet and always keep them in the vehicle.

WARNING

Read and always observe information and warnings concerning the use of child seats ⇒ ⚠ in "Safety notes on using child seats" on page 43. ■

Group 1 child seats

A suitable child seat and a correctly adjusted seat belt can help to protect your child.

Fig. 28 A category 1 forward-facing child seat fitted on the rear seat.

Child seats using the “ISOFIX” and “Toptether” system (or even the anti-rotation system) or seats in which the child faces the rear of the car are most appropriate for babies and small children weighing between 9 and 18 kg.

Follow the manufacturer's instructions and observe any statutory requirements when installing and using child seats.

We recommend that you include the manufacturer's directions for child seat use in the vehicle wallet and always keep them in the vehicle.

WARNING

Read and always observe information and warnings concerning the use of child seats ⇒ ⚠ in “Safety notes on using child seats” on page 43. ■

Group 2 and 3 child seats

A suitable child seat and a correctly adjusted seat belt can help to protect your child.

Fig. 29 Forward-facing child seat installed on rear seat.

Follow the manufacturer's instructions and observe any statutory requirements when installing and using child seats.

We recommend that you include the manufacturer's directions for child seat use in the vehicle wallet and always keep them in the vehicle.

Group 2 child seats

Children *under* 7 years of age weighing between 15 and 25 kg are best protected by group 2 child seats in conjunction with properly adjusted seat belts.

Group 3 child seats

Children *over* 7 years of age weighing between 22 and 36 kg but less than 1.5 metres tall are best protected by seat cushions with head restraints in conjunction with properly worn seat belts ⇒ fig. 29.

WARNING

- The shoulder part of the seat belt must lie approximately on the centre of the shoulder, never across the neck or the arm. The seat belt must lie close to the torso. The lap belt part must lie across the pelvis, not across the stomach, and always fit closely. Pull the belt tight if necessary to take up any slack ⇒ page 22, “Seat belts”.
- Read and always observe information and warnings concerning the use of child seats ⇒ ⚠ in “Safety notes on using child seats” on page 43. ■

Securing child seats

Ways to secure a child seat

A child seat can be secured differently on the rear seat and on the front passenger seat.

You can secure a child seat to the rear seat or front passenger seat in the following ways:

- Child seats in groups **0 to 3** can be secured with a seat belt.
- Child seats from the groups **0, 0+ and 1** using the "ISOFIX" and "Toptether" systems or the antirotation system may be secured without using the adult seatbelt and using the "ISOFIX" and "Toptether" anchors or the anti-rotation mechanism/brackets ⇒ page 48.

Weight class	Weight	Seat locations		
		Front passenger	Rear outer	Rear centre
Group 0	‹10 kg	U*	U	U
Group 0+	‹13 kg	U*	U	U
Group 1	9-18 kg	U*	U/L	U
Group 2 / 3	15-36 kg	X	UF	UF

U: Suitable for universal approved restraining systems for use in this age category (universal retention systems are those fitted using the adult seat belt.

UF Suitable for universal forward-facing retention systems approved for use with this age group.

*: Move the passenger seat as far to rear as possible, as high as possible and always deactivate the airbag.

L: Suitable for retention systems using the "ISOFIX" and "Toptether" anchors or antirotation mechanism/bracket.

X Seat position not suitable for children in this age group.

WARNING

- **When travelling, children must be secured in the vehicle with a restraint system suitable for age, weight and size.**
- **Never install a child seat facing backwards (or rear-facing) on the front passenger seat unless the front passenger airbag has been disabled. This represents a risk of fatal injuries to the child! However, if a child must, under exceptional circumstances, travel in the front passenger seat, the passenger airbag must be deactivated ⇒ page 40, "Deactivating airbags*" and the seat put into the highest position where possible.**
- **Read and always observe information and warnings concerning the use of child seats ⇒ ⚠ in "Safety notes on using child seats" on page 43.** ■

Securing the child seat using the “ISOFIX” and “Toptether” system or the antirotation mechanism/system

Child seats with the “ISOFIX” and “Toptether” system can be secured quickly, easily and safely on the rear outer seats.

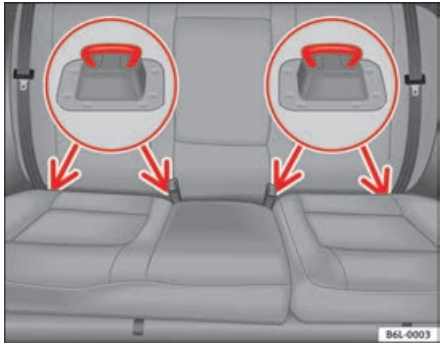

Fig. 30 ISOFIX securing rings

When removing or fitting the child seat, please be sure to follow the manufacturer's instructions.

– Move the seat as far to rear as it will go.

– Press the child seat onto the “ISOFIX” retaining rings until the child seat can be heard to engage securely. If the child seat is fitted with “Toptether” anchoring, connect it to the corresponding ring. If the child seat is fitted with any other antirotation system, follow the manufacturer instructions carefully.

– Pull on both sides of the child seat to ensure that it is secure.

Two “ISOFIX” retaining rings are fitted on each rear seat. In some vehicles, the rings are secured to the seat frame and in others they are secured to the rear floor. The “ISOFIX” rings can be accessed between the seat back and the seat cushion. The “Toptether” rings are located in the rear space in the back. They are often located on the rear of the seat backs.

Child seats with “ISOFIX” and “Toptether” mountings are available from the Authorised Service Centres.

WARNING

- **The retaining rings are designed only for use with “ISOFIX” and “Toptether” systems.**
- **Never secure child seats that do not have the “ISOFIX” or “Toptether” system, retaining belts or objects to the fastening rings – this can result in potentially fatal injuries to the child!**
- **Ensure that the child seat is secured correctly using the “ISOFIX” and “Toptether” anchors.** ■

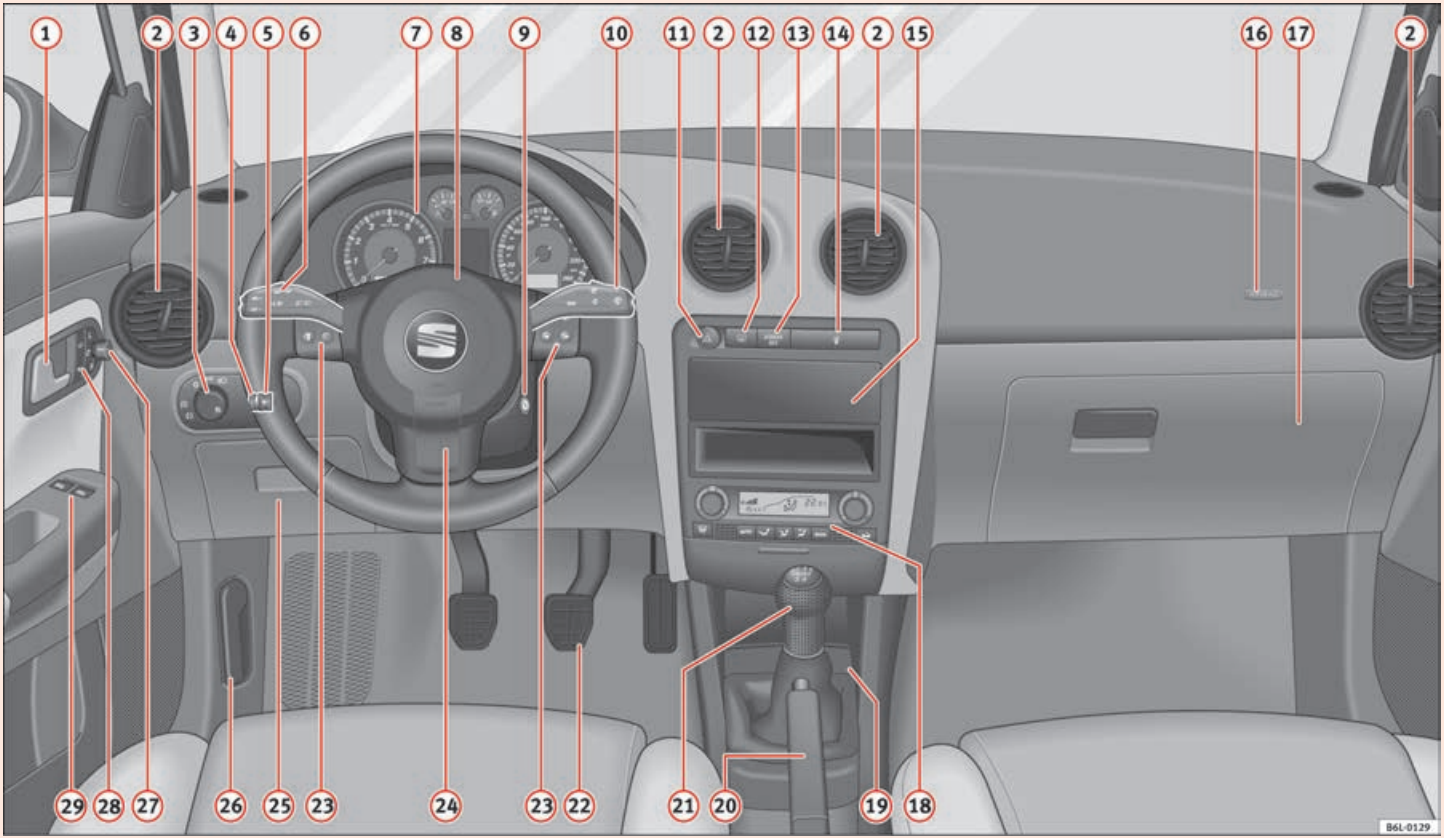

Fig. 31 Instrument panel

Operating instructions

Cockpit

Overview

Overview of the instrument panel

This overview will help you to familiarise yourself with the controls and displays.

1. Door release lever
2. Air vent
3. Light switch 90
4. Light dimmer for instrument panel lighting* 91
5. Headlight range control* 91
6. Turn signal and dipped beam lever and cruise control system* 93, 142
7. Instrument panel and warning lights:
   - Instruments 52
   - Indication lamps 60
8. Horn (works only when the ignition is on)/ and driver front airbag* 27
9. Steering and starter lock 132
10. Windscreen wiper and windscreen wash lever and operation of the multi-function display * 97, 55
11. Switch for hazard warning lights 92
12. Switch for heated rear window 91
13. Airbag disconnected warning light* 28
14. Cup holder* 112
15. Radio casing*/Radio navigation system*
16. Passenger airbag* 30
17. Glove box/Stowage compartment 110
18. Switches for:
    - Heating and ventilation 119
    - Air conditioning* 122
    - Climatronic* 125
19. Ashtray/ cigarette lighter/socket 113
20. Handbrake lever 141
21. Automatic / manual gearbox lever * 137, 136
22. Pedals 14
23. Controls on the steering wheel* 68
24. Steering column control lever* 130
25. Stowage compartment 111
26. Bonnet release lever 181
27. Control for adjusting electric wing mirrors* 102
28. Central locking button* 73
29. Electric window controls* 84

Note

Some of the items of equipment listed here are fitted only on certain models/model years or are optional extras. ■

Instruments

Instrument overview

The instruments display the vehicle operating status.

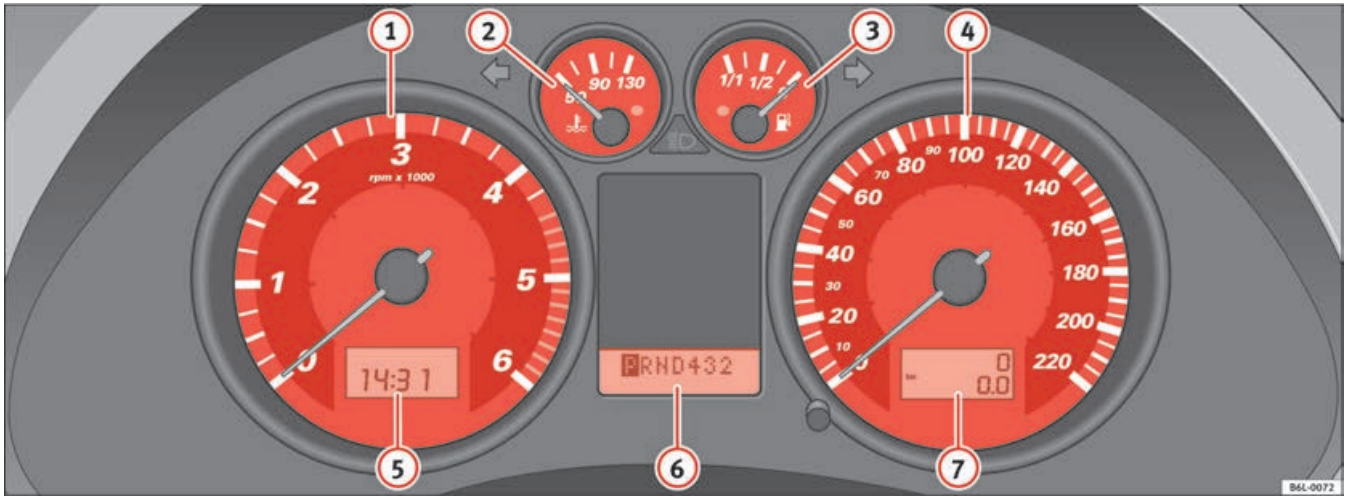

Fig. 32 Detailed view of instrument panel instrument panel

The layout of the instruments depends upon the model and engine.

1. Rev counter* ⇒ page 53
2. Coolant temperature gauge ⇒ page 53
3. Fuel gauge ⇒ page 54
4. Speedometer ⇒ page 54
5. Digital clock*/Outside temperature display*/Multifunction display ⇒ page 54
6. Display field for selector lever position ⇒ page 58
7. Distance display with service interval display* ⇒ page 58 ■

Rev counter

The rev. counter displays the engine speed in revolutions per minute.

The start of the red zone on the dial ⇒ page 52, fig. 32 (1) indicates the maximum engine speed which may be used briefly when the engine is warm and after it has been run in properly. However, it is advisable to change up a gear or move the selector lever to D (or lift your foot off the accelerator) before the needle reaches the red zone.

Caution

The rev counter needle must never enter the red zone on the scale. Risk of engine damage.

For the sake of the environment

Changing up a gear early will help you to save fuel and minimise engine noise. ■

Engine coolant temperature display

This gauge shows the engine coolant temperature.

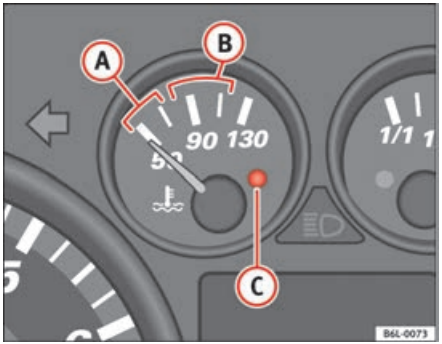

Fig. 33 Engine coolant temperature

Needle in cold zone (A)

Avoid high engine speeds and heavy engine loads ⇒ fig. 33.

Needle in normal zone (B)

In normal driving conditions, the needle should be in the middle section of the scale. The temperature may also rise when the engine is working hard, especially at high outside temperatures. This is no cause for concern, as long as the warning lamp (C) does not light up on the instrument panel.

Needle in warning zone (C)

The warning lamp* ⇒ page 60, fig. 40 (2) will light up and a buzzer will be heard if the needle is in the warning zone. **Stop the car and switch off the engine.** Check the coolant level ⇒ page 186 ⇒ ⚠.

Even if the coolant level is correct **do not continue driving**. You should obtain technical assistance. ▶

WARNING

When working in the engine compartment, always bear in mind the safety warnings ⇒ page 179.

Caution

Accessories in front of the air inlet reduce the cooling effect of the coolant. At high outside temperatures and high engine loads, there is a risk of the engine overheating. ■

Fuel gauge and reserve indicator

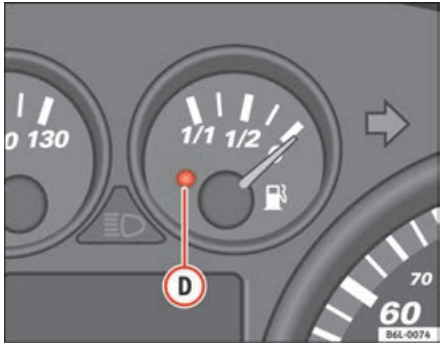

Fig. 34 Fuel gauge

Instrument panel: fuel tank gauge

The fuel tank has a capacity of approx. 45 litres.

When the needle reaches the reserve zone ⇒ fig. 34 the warning lamp will light and an acoustic signal will sound **reminding the driver to refuel**. At this point there are still about 7 litres of fuel in the tank. ■

Speedometer

The speedometer is equipped with a digital odometer and a trip counter, in addition to a service intervals display.

During the running-in period, the instructions shown on ⇒ page 151 should be followed. ■

Digital display in the instrument panel

Digital clock*

– Turn the setting knob ⇒ page 52, fig. 32 (5) anti-clockwise to the stop to set the hour. If the knob is turned briefly anti-clockwise the clock will advance one hour further.

– Turn the setting knob clockwise to the limit stop to set the minutes. If the knob is turned briefly clockwise the clock will advance one minute further. ■

Ambient temperature display*

The outside temperature is displayed when the ignition is switched on.

At descending temperatures between +4°C down to -7°C and at ascending temperatures from -5°C up to +6°C in addition to the outside temperature display, an ice crystal is displayed and if vehicle speed is over 10 km/h an acoustic buzzer is heard.

The illumination of the crystal symbol aims to warn the driver of the risk of ice, so that he/she proceeds with due care.

When the vehicle is stationary or travelling at very low speeds, the temperature displayed may be slightly higher than the actual outside temperature as a result of heat coming from the engine. ■

Display with multi-function display (MFD)*

The multi-function display (MFD) shows you diverse journey and consumption data.

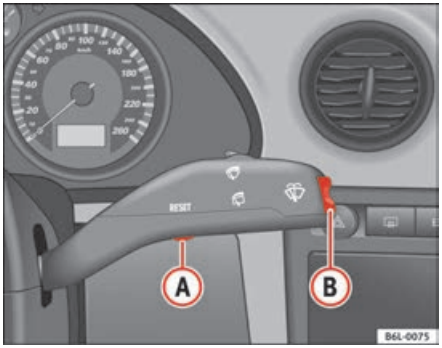

Fig. 35 Windscreen wiper and windscreen wash lever: button A and rocker switch B

Fig. 36 Digital instrument panel display: Outside temperature display

The multi-function system uses two automatic memories: **1 - Current memory** and **2 - Total memory**. The selected memory will be shown in the upper right-hand corner of the display.

Selecting memory

– With the ignition switched on, briefly press the button ⇒ page 55, fig. 35 (A) on the windscreen wiper lever to move between the two memories.

Resetting the memory

– Select the memory that you would like to reset.

– Press and hold button (A) on the windscreen wiper lever for at least 2 seconds.

The **trip memory 1** collects the travel and consumption data from the moment the ignition is switched on until it is switched off. If the journey is continued within two hours of switching off the ignition, the new values will be added to the existing trip recorder memory. The memory will automatically be deleted if the journey is interrupted for more than two hours.

The **total journey memory 2** collects the journey data for any number of individual journeys (even if the ignition is switched off for longer than two hours) up to a total of 99 hours and 59 minutes travel time, 9999 miles distance travelled and 999 litres of fuel consumed. The memory will automatically be deleted if one of the named values is reached. ■

Displays in the multi-function display (MFD)*

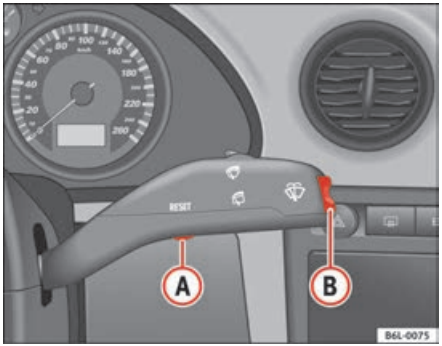

Fig. 37 Windscreen wiper and windscreen wash lever: button A and rocker switch B

Fig. 38 Digital instrument panel display: outside temperature display.

You can switch between the following displays in the multi-function display (MFD) by operating the rocker switch ⇒ fig. 37 (B) on the windscreen wiper lever. ▶

Memory displays

- Time
- Journey duration
- Average speed
- Distance
- Distance to empty (the distance you can travel with the remaining fuel)
- Average fuel consumption
- Current fuel consumption
- Ambient temperature display

Time

The time is also displayed when the ignition is switched off. The clock can be set with the right-hand rotating button below the rev counter “digital clock”.

min - Journey duration

The display shows the amount of time that has elapsed since the ignition was switched on.

The maximum display value in both memories is 99 hours and 59 minutes. The memory will automatically be deleted once this value has been reached.

Ømph - Average speed

The average speed will be shown after a distance of approximately 100 metres has been travelled. Dashes will appear in the display until that time. The display will be updated every 5 seconds whilst the vehicle is in motion.

Miles - Distance travelled

The display shows the distance travelled since the ignition was switched on.

The maximum display value in both memories is 9999 miles. The memory will automatically be deleted once this value has been reached.

Miles - Fuel range

The fuel range is calculated using the figures for tank content and current fuel consumption. It shows how far the vehicle can travel using the same conditions as a reference.

Ø litre/100km - Average fuel consumption

The average fuel consumption will be shown ⇒ page 56, fig. 38 after a distance of approximately 100 metres has been travelled. Dashes will appear in the display until that time. The display will be updated every 5 seconds whilst the vehicle is in motion. The amount of fuel used will not be shown.

ltr/100km or ltr/hr - Current fuel consumption

The display will show the current fuel consumption in litre/km whilst the vehicle is in motion or in litre/hour when the vehicle is in a stationary position with the engine running.

Using this display you can see how your driving style affects fuel consumption ⇒ page 160.

Ambient temperature display

The measurement margin extends from -45°C to +58°C. At temperatures lower than +4°C, an “ice crystal symbol” is displayed and a “warning” sounds if the vehicle is moving at more than 10 km/h (ice warning). This symbol will flash for about 10 seconds and remains lit until the exterior temperature rises above +4°C or 6°C if it was already lit.

WARNING

There could be black ice on the road surface even if the “snowflake symbol” is not shown. You should, for this reason, not rely exclusively on this display - Risk of accident!

Note

When the vehicle is stationary or travelling at very low speeds, the temperature displayed may be slightly higher than the actual ambient temperature as a result of the heat radiated from the engine. ■

Display field for selector lever position*

The position of the automatic gearbox selector lever is shown on the display ⇒ page 137. ■

Mileage display or Service Interval Display

Fig. 39 Service interval display

Distance display

The upper counter in the display registers the total distance covered by the vehicle.

The lower counter registers the short journeys. The last digit indicates steps of 100 metres. The trip recorder counter may be reset by the reset button ⇒ page 52, fig. 32 (6).

Service interval display

When a service is due, the lower counter (trip counter) of the speedometer displays the symbol of a spanner, followed by one of the following messages:

INSP- Maintenance service

The maintenance message switches off 20 minutes after the engine is started. The trip counter can also be reset, by pressing the reset button for more than 0.5 seconds[2].

The Service Centre who carry out the maintenance service will reset the maintenance interval display on completion of the service.

We recommend that the repair and maintenance work only be carried out at Authorised Service Centres.

The service indicator can also be reset by pressing the trip counter button. Proceed as follows:

- Switch off ignition.
- Keep “Reset” button on distance counter pressed.
- Connect ignition with the “Reset” button pressed. The fixed mode display appears.
- Release the reset button and rotate it to the right. The display will return to the normal mode. The indication has been reset.

Caution

We recommend that the resetting of the service interval indicator be carried out in an Authorised Service Centre to avoid possible faults in the vehicle. ▶

[2] With “Ignition OFF” the maintenance display remains visible.

Note

- The indication can only be reset when a pre-warning or warning is indicated.
- Do not reset the display between two service intervals, otherwise the display will be incorrect.
- The values are stored even when the battery is disconnected. ■

Warning lamps

Overview of the warning lamps

The warning lamps indicate a number of different functions and possible faults.

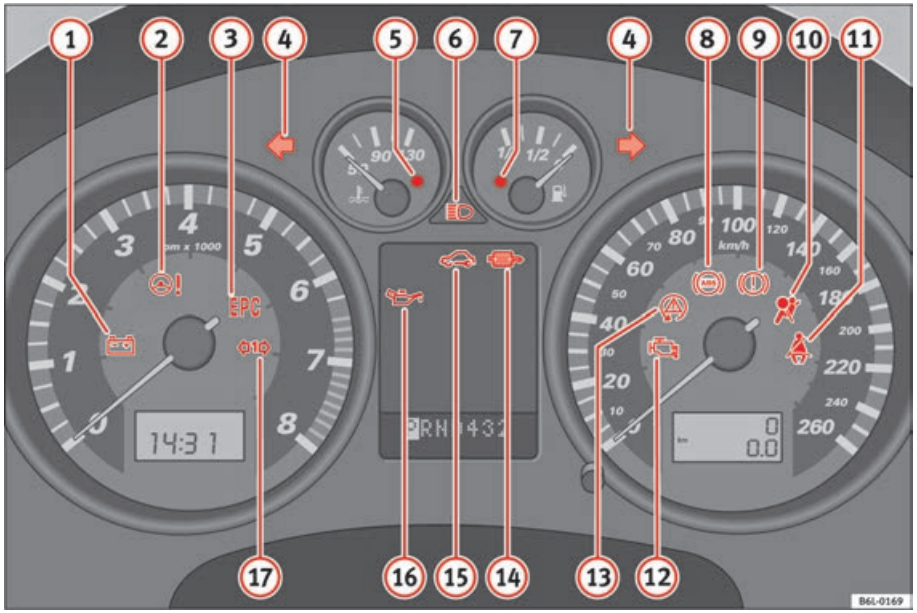

Fig. 40 Instrument panel with warning lamps. Some of the items of equipment listed here are fitted only on certain models/model years or are optional extras.

Item	Symbol	Meaning of warning and control lamps	Further information
1		Alternator fault	⇒ page 62
2		Electro-hydraulic steering	⇒ page 62
3	EPC	Engine fault (petrol engine)	⇒ page 63
3		Preheating system (diesel engine) **If lit:** preheating active **If flashing:** engine fault	⇒ page 63
4		Turn signals in operation	⇒ page 63
5		Coolant level / coolant temperature	⇒ page 63
6		Main beam switched on	⇒ page 64
7		Fuel level / reserve	⇒ page 64
8	ABS	Anti-lock brake system (ABS) *	⇒ page 64
9		Parking brake applied or low brake fluid level or fault in brake system	⇒ page 65
10		Airbag or belt tension device system fault or airbag disabled	⇒ page 25 ⇒ page 28
11		Seat belt warning lamp*	⇒ page 16
12		Fault in the emission control system	⇒ page 65
13		Traction control system (TCS)*/Electronic stabilisation program (ESP)*	⇒ page 66

Item	Symbol	Meaning of warning and control lamps	Further information
14		Pollen accumulation in the diesel engine particulate filter	⇒ page 66
15		Electronic immobiliser	⇒ page 67
16		Engine oil pressure	⇒ page 67
17		Trailer turn signals in operation	⇒ page 67

WARNING

- **Failure to observe warning lamps and warning messages can result in serious personal injury or damage to your vehicle.**
- **The risk of an accident increases if your vehicle breaks down. Use a warning triangle to draw the attention of other road users to your stationary vehicle so that it does not represent a danger.**
- **The engine compartment of any motor vehicle is a dangerous area! Before you open the bonnet to work on the engine or in the engine compartment, you must switch off the engine and allow it to cool to reduce the risk of scalding or other injuries. Read and observe the relevant warnings ⇒ page 179.**

Note

- The appropriate warning lamp for a fault will light up in vehicles without warning or information texts in the display.
- In vehicles with warning or information texts in the display, the appropriate warning lamp for a fault will light up and a warning or information text will also appear in the display. ■

Alternator

This warning lamp signals a fault in the alternator.

The warning lamp lights up when the ignition is switched on. It should go out when the engine has started running.

If the warning lamp lights up while driving, the alternator is no longer charging the battery. You should immediately drive to the nearest qualified workshop.

You should avoid using electrical equipment that is not absolutely necessary because this will drain the battery.

If the indicator flashes the voltage is insufficient for normal vehicle operation. ■

Electro-hydraulic steering* ⊘!

The level of steering assistance depends on the vehicle speed and on the steering angle.

The warning lamp should light up for a few seconds when the ignition is switched on. It should go out when the engine has started running. ▶

There is a fault in the electro-hydraulic steering system if the lamp does not go out or lights up whilst the vehicle is in motion. Take the vehicle to the Authorised Service Centre as soon as possible.

Note

When towing the vehicle with the engine stopped or due to a fault in the power steering, this will not operate. The vehicle can still be steered, but it will require greater force to turn the steering wheel. ■

Engine management EPC

This warning lamp monitors the engine management system for petrol engines.

The warning lamp EPC (Electronic Power Control) lights up when the ignition is switched on to show that the lamp is working properly. It should go out when the engine has started running.

If a fault develops in the electronic engine management system while you are driving, this warning lamp will light up. Stop the vehicle and seek technical assistance. ■

Glow plug system / Engine fault* ℳ

The warning lamp lights up to show that the glow plugs are preheating. It flashes if there is an engine fault.

Warning lamp ℳ is lit

The warning lamp ℳ lights up while the glow plugs are preheating. When the warning lamp goes off, the engine should be started straight away.

Warning lamp ℳ flashes

If a fault develops in the engine management system while you are driving, the glow plug lamp will flash ℳ. Take the vehicle to an Authorised Service Centre as soon as possible and have the engine checked. ■

Turn signals ⇦ ⇨

The warning lamp flashes when the turn signals are in operation.

Depending on which turn signal is operated, either the left ⇦ or right ⇨ indicator lamp flashes. Both warning lamps will flash at the same time when the hazard warning lights are switched on.

If one turn signal fails, the warning lamp will start flashing twice as fast.

Further information on the turn signals ⇒ page 93. ■

Coolant Level* / temperature

The warning lamp lights up if the coolant temperature is too high or if the coolant level is too low.

There is a fault if:

- The warning symbol does not go out again after a few seconds.
- The warning lamp lights up or flashes while the vehicle is moving, while **three acoustic warning signals** ⇒ ⚠ are emitted.

This means that either the coolant level is too low or the coolant temperature is too high. ▶

Coolant temperature too high

First look at the coolant temperature gauge. The coolant temperature is too high if the needle is over the warning area on the dial. **Stop the vehicle, switch off the engine and wait for it to cool down.** Check the coolant level.

If the coolant level is correct, the overheating may be caused by a malfunction of the radiator fan. Check the radiator fan fuse and have it replaced if necessary ⇒ page 211.

If the warning lamp lights up again after driving on for a short distance, **stop the vehicle and switch off the engine**. Contact an Authorised Service Centre or a qualified workshop.

Coolant level too low

First look at the coolant temperature gauge. If the needle is in the normal range, top up with coolant at the earliest opportunity ⇒ ⚠.

WARNING

- **If your vehicle is immobilised for any technical reasons, move it to a safe distance from traffic. Turn off the engine, turn on the hazard lights and place the warning triangle.**
- **Never open the bonnet if you can see or hear steam or coolant escaping from the engine compartment. Risk of scalding. Wait until you can no longer see or hear escaping steam or coolant.**
- **The engine compartment of any motor vehicle is a dangerous area! Before carrying out any work in the engine compartment, switch off the engine and allow it to cool down. Always note the corresponding warnings ⇒ page 179.** ■

Main beam headlights

This warning lamp lights up when the main beams are on.

The warning lamp lights up when the main beams are on or when the headlight flasher is operated.

Further information ⇒ page 93. ■

Fuel level / reserve

This symbol lights up to indicate that the fuel tank is down to the reserve level.

This lights when only 7 litres of fuel remain in the tank. Also, an **audible warning** is given. This serves as a reminder to fill up with fuel at the earliest opportunity ⇒ page 176. ■

Anti-lock brake system (ABS)

A warning lamp system monitors the ABS.

The warning lamp should light up for a few seconds when the ignition is switched on. It goes out again after the system has run through an automatic test sequence.

There is a fault in the ABS if:

- The warning lamp does not light up when the ignition is switched on.
- The warning lamp does not go out again after a few seconds.
- The warning lamp lights up when the vehicle is moving.

The vehicle can still be braked in the normal way (except that the ABS control function will not function). Please take the vehicle to a qualified workshop as soon as possible. For further information on the ABS see the ⇒ page 148.

If a fault occurs in the ABS, the ESP* warning lamp will also light up.

Brake system fault

If the ABS warning lamp (ABS) lights up together with the brake warning lamp (!), this indicates not only a fault in the ABS function, but also a possible fault in the brake system ⇒ ⚠.

WARNING

- **Before opening the bonnet, read and observe the warnings on ⇒ page 179, "Working in the engine compartment".**
- **If the brake warning lamp (!) should light up together with the ABS warning lamp (ABS), stop the vehicle immediately and check the brake fluid level in the reservoir ⇒ page 191, "Brake fluid". If the fluid level has dropped below the "MIN" mark you must not drive on. Risk of accident. Obtain technical assistance.**
- **If the brake fluid level is correct, the fault in the brake system may have been caused by a failure of the ABS system. This could cause the rear wheels to lock quickly when you brake. This could cause the rear to break away. Risk of skidding. Stop the vehicle and seek technical assistance.** ■

Brake system* / handbrake (!)

The warning lamp lights up if the handbrake is applied, if the brake fluid level falls too low or if there is a fault in the brake system.

This warning lamp (!) lights up if

- If the handbrake is on
- If the brake fluid level is too low ⇒ page 191
- If there is a fault in the brake system

This warning lamp can light up together with the anti-lock brake system warning lamp.

WARNING

- **If the brake warning lamp does not go out, or if it lights up when driving, the brake fluid level ⇒ page 191, "Brake fluid" in the reservoir is too low. Risk of accident. Stop the vehicle and do not drive on. Obtain technical assistance.**
- **If the brake warning lamp (!) lights up together with the ABS warning lamp (ABS), the control function of the ABS could be out of action. This could cause the rear wheels to lock quickly when you brake. This could cause the rear to break away. Risk of skidding. Stop the vehicle and seek technical assistance.** ■

Emission control system* (engine)

This warning lamp monitors the exhaust system.

Warning lamp (engine) flashes:

When there is misfiring that can damage the catalytic converter. Reduce speed and drive carefully to the nearest qualified workshop to have the engine checked.

Warning lamp (engine) is lit:

If a fault has developed during driving which has reduced the quality of the exhaust gas (e. g. lambda probe fault). Reduce speed and drive carefully to the nearest qualified workshop to have the engine checked. ■

Traction control system (TCS)*

The traction control system prevents the driven wheels from spinning when the vehicle is accelerating

The warning lamp lights up when the ignition is switched on and should turn out after about 2 seconds.

When the TCS is operating while driving, the warning lamp flashes. If the system is deactivated or if there is any fault in the same, the warning lamp will remain lit.

It will also come on if a fault should occur in the ABS because the TCS operates in conjunction with the ABS. For further information see ⇒ page 147, “Brakes”. ■

Electronic stabilisation programme (ESP)*

This warning lamp monitors the electronic stabilisation program.

This program includes the ABS, EDL and TCS.

The warning lamp has the following functions:

- It will light for about 2 seconds when the ignition is switched on while a test of the function is carried out.
- It flashes when the ESP is activated when driving.
- It will light up continuously if there is a malfunction in the ESP.
- It will light up continuously if the ESP is switched off.
- It will also come on if a fault should occur in the ABS because the ESP operates in conjunction with the ABS.

If the ESP warning lamp lights up and stays on after the engine is started, this may mean that the control system has temporarily switched off the ESP.

In this case the ESP can be reactivated by switching the ignition off and then on again. If the warning lamp goes out, this means the system is fully functional. ■

Accumulation of soot in the particulate filter of diesel engines

If this symbol comes on, you can help the filter to self-clean by driving suitably for the purpose.

You should drive for about 15 minutes in fourth or fifth gear (automatic gearbox: S gear setting) at a speed of 60 km.p.h., with the engine running at approximately 2000 rpm. This raises the temperature and burns off the soot accumulated in the filter. When the filter has been cleaned successfully, the filter light goes off.

If the light on symbol does not go off, take the vehicle to a specialist workshop to repair the fault.

WARNING

- **Always reduce speed as appropriate for the terrain, road type, traffic and weather conditions. The recommendations for driving must never lead drivers to break the traffic laws.**
- **The particulate filter on diesel engines can reach very high temperatures, therefore it is recommended not to park the vehicle in such a way that the particulate filter comes into contact with the highly inflammable material under the vehicle. Failure to comply could result in fire.**

Caution

Vehicles equipped with a diesel engine particulate filter must not be refuelled using biodiesel (RME), given that the fuel system may be damaged. ■

Electronic immobiliser

Inside the key there is a chip that deactivates the electronic immobiliser automatically when the key is inserted into the ignition. The immobiliser will be activated again automatically as soon as you pull the key out of the ignition lock.

The engine can, however, be started if the appropriate coded SEAT genuine key is used.

Note

The vehicle cannot be operated properly if you do not have a genuine SEAT key. ■

Engine oil pressure

This warning lamp indicates that the engine oil pressure is too low.

If this warning symbol starts to flash, and is accompanied by three **audible warnings**, switch off the engine and check the oil level. If the oil level is too low, add more engine oil ⇒ page 182.

If the symbol flashes although the oil level is correct, *do not* drive on. The engine must not even run at idle speed. Obtain technical assistance. ■

Trailer turn signals

This warning lamp also flashes when the turn signals are operated while towing a caravan or trailer.

The warning lamp flashes when the turn signals are operated, provided a trailer is correctly attached and connected to the vehicle.

The warning lamp will not flash if one of the turn signals on the trailer fails. ■

Differential lock fault (EDL)*

*EDL operates along with the ABS in vehicles equipped with an Electronic Stabilisation Program (ESP)**

A malfunction in the EDL is indicated by the ABS warning lamp. Please take the vehicle to a qualified workshop as soon as possible. For further information on the EDL ⇒ page 150, “Electronic differential lock (EDL)*”. ■

Steering wheel controls*

Audio control from controls on the steering wheel

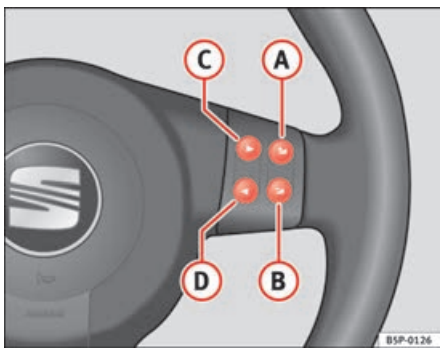

Fig. 41 Controls on the steering wheel

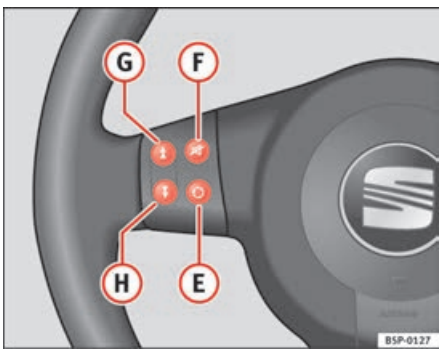

Fig. 42 Controls on the steering wheel

Button	Short press				Long press			
	Radio	CD Audio	CD mp3	CDC	Radio	CD Audio	CD mp3	CDC
A	Volume up				Continue volume up			
B	Volume down				Continue volume down			
C	Search upwards for station	Following track			Search upwards for station	Fast forward		

Button	Short press				Long press			
	Radio	CD Audio	CD mp3	CDC	Radio	CD Audio	CD mp3	CDC
D	Search down-wards for station	Previous track			Search down-wards for station	Rewind		
E	Change source cycle				No specified function			
F	Silence				No specified function			
G	Next preset	No function	Change folder	Change CD	No specified function			
H	Previous preset	No function	Previous folder	Previous CD	No specified function			

Unlocking and locking

Doors

Locking and unlocking the vehicle

From the outside of the vehicle, the driver's door may be locked or unlocked using the key.

When opened, the latch will rise up (for vehicles without central locking).

For vehicles equipped with electric windows and central locking, if the key is maintained in the opening position all of the electric side windows will open.

When locking the latch will descend (for vehicles without central locking).

In some vehicle models equipped with electric windows and central locking, if the key is maintained in the locking position on the driver side, any side windows left open, as well as the electric sunroof, will close.

For vehicles without central locking, the passenger door and the rear doors may be locked from the outside without using a key. Just press the button down and close the door.

The latch on the driver's door may not be pushed down while the door is open (only in vehicles without central locking). This avoids accidentally leaving the keys in the ignition.

From inside all the doors may be locked by pushing the security buttons down (in vehicles without central locking).

WARNING

- **Exercise extreme caution when closing the windows and the sunroof from the outside of the vehicle.**

WARNING (continued)

- **Closing from the outside without taking care or observing all the vehicle may cause bruising for other people especially children.**
- **When locking a vehicle, never leave children unaccompanied inside, as it will be difficult to provide assistance if required.**
- **When the doors are locked, any intrusion is impeded, for example while stopped at a red light.** ■

Central locking*

Description

The central locking system enables you to lock and unlock all the doors and the tailgate from one point.

Central locking can be activated using any of the following options:

- **the key**, by inserting it into the driver's door cylinder and rotating manually,
- **the central locking button**, (electronic control) in the passenger compartment ⇒ page 73.
- **the radio frequency remote control**, using the buttons on the key ⇒ page 78.

Various functions are available to improve the vehicle security:

- Locking system “Safe”
- Selective unlocking system*

- Auto-locking to prevent involuntary unlocking
- Automatic speed dependent locking and unlocking system*
- Emergency unlocking system.

Note

For anti-theft security, only the driver's door is fitted with a lock cylinder. ■

Safety system “Safe”

This is an anti-theft device consisting of a double lock for the door locks and a deactivation function for the boot in order to make forced entry more difficult.

Activation

The “safe” system is activated when the vehicle is locked using the key or the remote control.

To activate this system with the key, rotate the key once in the door lock cylinder in the locking direction.

To activate the system using the remote control, press the lock button on the remote once.

When this system is activated, it is not possible to open the doors normally, from the outside or the inside. The boot/tailgate may not be opened. The central locking button does not work.

Voluntary deactivation

The “Safe” system can be deactivated voluntarily by the user.

This is done by locking two times in quick succession (in under 2 seconds). This double locking can be executed using the key or the remote control.

Using the key, rotate the lock cylinder twice in the locking direction.

To activate the system using the remote control, press the lock button on the remote twice.

When the “Safe” system is deactivated, the alarm volumetric sensor is also deactivated.

When the “Safe” system is deactivated, the doors are locked using the simple locking system, meaning that they may be opened from the interior but not from the exterior.

Involuntary deactivation

The methods described for deactivation of the “Safe” system may be executed involuntarily (for example, if we press the button because we want to lock the vehicle, and it locks as a result, however, we are not sure that it is locked and we press the button once more within 2 seconds, we will have deactivated the “Safe” system).

Deactivation when opening

To deactivate the system on opening, see “Selective unlocking system*”

“Safe” status

On the driver's door, there is a light indicator visible from the outside of the vehicle that indicates the “Safe” system status.

We can see that the “Safe” system is activated, by the flashing of the light indicator. The indicator will flash on all vehicles, whether they are fitted with an alarm or not, and until the vehicle is unlocked.

Remember:

Safe activated with or without alarm: Continuous flashing of indicator.

Safe deactivated without alarm: The indicator remains off.

Safe deactivated with alarm: The indicator remains off. ▶

WARNING

No one should remain in the vehicle if the “Safe” deadlock mechanism has been activated. It is not possible to open the doors from the inside or the outside and this would make any outside intervention difficult in case of emergency. Danger of death. People could become trapped inside in an emergency. ■

Selective unlocking system*

This system allows for unlocking only the driver's door, or all the vehicle.

Driver's door unlock button

This is done by a simple unlocking (once). This can be done with the key or the remote control.

With the key, rotate the key once in the lock cylinder in the unlock direction. The driver's door will be released from the “Safe” system and unlocked and may be opened, the indicator light will also be switched off. For vehicles fitted with an alarm, this system is deactivated.

Using the remote control, press the unlock button on the remote once. The “Safe” system is deactivated for all the vehicle, only the driver's door is unlocked for opening, the alarm is turned off as is the light indicator.

Unlocking all doors and the boot

So that all the doors and the boot can be opened, the unlock button on the remote must be pressed twice.

The button must be pressed twice in under 2 seconds and this will deactivate the “Safe” system for all the vehicle, all doors will be unlocked and the boot will be activated. The indicator will be turned off as will be the alarm for those vehicles fitted with one.

Unlocking the boot

See ⇒ page 78 and ⇒ page 83. ■

Locking system for involuntary unlocking

This is an anti-theft system and will avoid situations where the vehicle is opened unintentionally

The vehicle will be re-locked automatically, if it is unlocked and neither the boot nor any of the doors are opened within 30 seconds. This function prevents the vehicle from remaining unlocked if the unlocking button is pressed by mistake. ■

Automatic speed dependent locking and unlocking system*

This is a safety system to prevent access to the vehicle from the exterior when the vehicle is in transit (for example, when stopped at a traffic light).

Locking

The doors and the boot are automatically locked when vehicle speed exceeds 15 km/h.

If the vehicle is stopped and one of the doors is opened, when the vehicle moves off again and exceeds a speed of 15 km/h the unlocked door(s) will be locked once more.

Unlocking

The driver's door automatically unlocks when the key is removed from the ignition.

Each door may be unlocked and opened from the interior (for example when a passenger gets out). For this, simply operate the lever on the inside of the door twice.

WARNING

The inside door handles should never be operated when the vehicle is running: the door will open. ■

Emergency unlocking system

The entire vehicle is unlocked if the airbags are triggered during an accident, except for the boot. It is possible to lock the vehicle from inside using the central locking, after turning the ignition off and back on again. ■

Central locking button

The vehicle can be locked and unlocked from the inside using the central locking button.

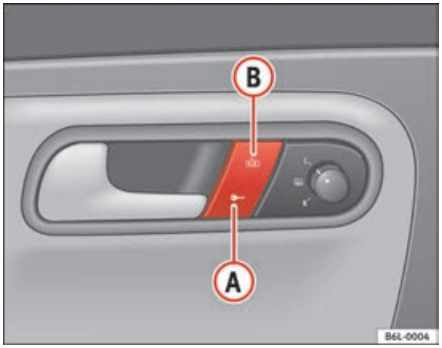

Fig. 43 Central locking button

Locking the vehicle

– Press the button ⇒ ⚠.

Unlocking the doors

– Press the button.

The central locking button is still operative when the ignition is switched off. Except, if the "safe" security system is activated.

Please note the following when you use the central locking button to lock your vehicle:

- It will not be possible to open the doors or the tailgate from the *outside* (this may offer extra safety, for instance when stopped at traffic lights).

- The driver's door cannot be locked if it is open. This prevents you from locking yourself out of the vehicle.
- Repeated operation of the central locking will deactivate the central locking button for 30 seconds. Once this time has passed, the button may be used once more.
- There is a danger that the key may remain inside the vehicle, if the vehicle is locked using the central locking button when the driver's door is closed and, for example, the passenger door open. If this door is closed, then the keys will remain inside the vehicle.
- All doors may be locked separately from inside the car. Do this by pulling the door release lever *twice*.

WARNING

- **If the vehicle is locked, children and disabled people may be trapped inside.**
- **The central locking button is not operative in the following cases.**
- **When the vehicle is locked from the outside (using the remote or the key).**
- **While the ignition is not activated after unlocking the door lock cylinder with the key.**

Note

- Vehicle locked, button
- Vehicle unlocked, button

Childproof locks

The childproof lock prevents the rear doors being opened from the inside. This system prevents minors from opening a door accidentally while the vehicle is moving.

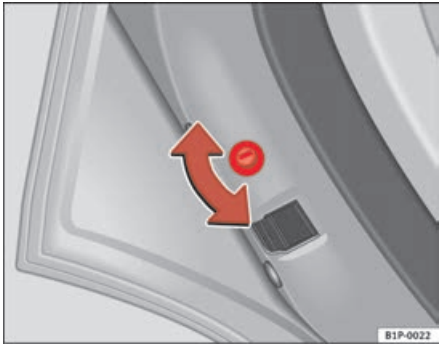

Fig. 44 Child safety lock on the left hand side door

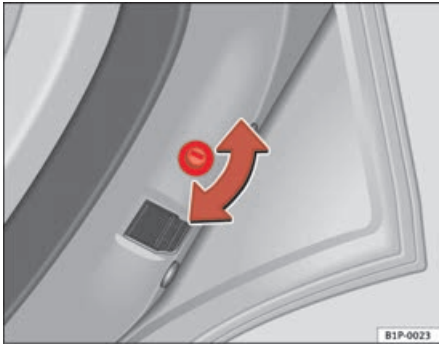

Fig. 45 Child safety lock on the right hand side door

This function is independent of the electronic opening and locking systems of the vehicle. It only affects the rear doors. It is only possible to activate it and deactivate it manually, as described below:

Activating the childproof lock

– Unlock the car and open the door you wish to childproof.

– With the door open, rotate the groove in the door using the ignition key, anti-clockwise for the left hand side doors, and clockwise for the right hand side doors ⇒ page 74, fig. 44, ⇒ page 74, fig. 45.

Deactivating the childproof lock

– Unlock the car and open the door for which you wish to deactivate the childproof lock.

– With the door open, rotate the groove in the door using the ignition key, anti-clockwise for the right-hand side doors, and clockwise for the left-hand side doors ⇒ page 74, fig. 44, ⇒ page 74, fig. 45.

When the childproof lock is activated, the door can be opened from the outside only. The childproof lock can be activated and deactivated using the key in the groove when the door is open, as described above. ■

Keys

Key set

The set of keys includes a remote control, a key without a remote control and a key tab with the number of the key.

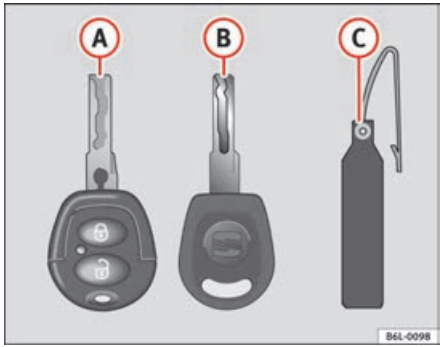

Fig. 46 Set of keys

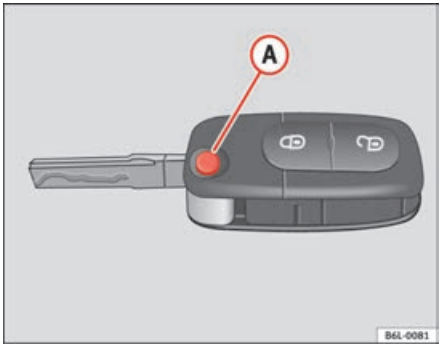

Fig. 47 Folding key

The key set belonging to your vehicle consists of the following items:

- a key with a remote control ⇒ fig. 46 (A)
- one key without remote control (B),
- one key tab (C) with the key number.

Plastic key tab

Spare keys cannot be issued without the key number on the key tab ⇒ fig. 46 (B). Therefore:

- Always keep the key tab in a safe place.
- Never leave the key tab in the vehicle.

If you sell the vehicle, please give the plastic key tab to the new owner.

Folding key*

To unfold key bit, press button. This unfolds thanks to a spring device ⇒ fig. 47.

To fold the key bit, press the button and push with the hand, until it is correctly folded ⇒ fig. 47.

Duplicate keys

If you need a replacement key, take your key tab to an Authorised Service Centre.

WARNING

- **Incorrect use of the keys can result in critical injuries.**
- **Never leave children or disabled persons in the vehicle; in case of emergency they may not be able to leave the vehicle or look after themselves.**
- **Unsupervised use of a key could mean that the engine is started or that electrical equipment is used (e.g. electric windows). Risk of accident. The doors can be locked using the remote control key. This could result in people being trapped in the vehicle in an emergency.**
- **Never leave any of the vehicle keys in the vehicle. Unauthorised use of your vehicle could result in injury, damage or theft. Always take the key with you when you leave the vehicle.**
- **Never remove the key from the ignition if the vehicle is in motion. Risk of accident. The steering lock could engage suddenly, and you would not be able to steer the vehicle.**

Caution

There are electronic components in the key and remote control. Protect the keys from moisture and excessive vibration. ■

Radio frequency remote control

Locking and unlocking the vehicle

The remote control key can be used to lock and unlock the vehicle from a distance.

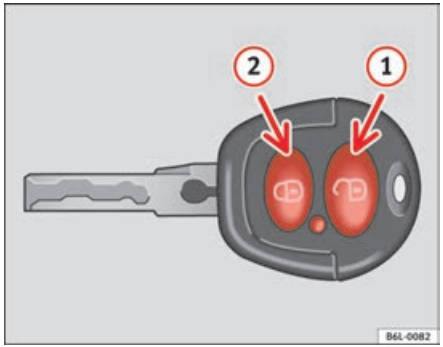

Fig. 48 Assignment of buttons on the remote control key

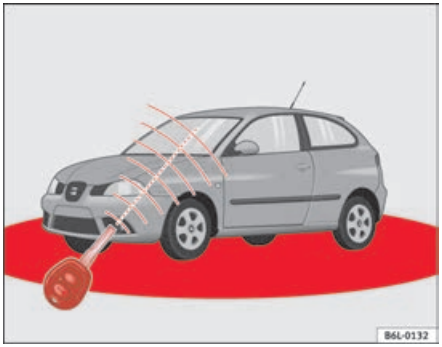

Fig. 49 Range of the remote control

The following functions can be performed using the remote control and without using the key itself

- Opening and closing central locking system.
- Turning the anti theft alarm* and the locking security system (double lock) on and off.
- Turning interior light on.

The radio frequency remote control device with batteries is fitted in the head of the vehicle key. The receiver is in the interior of the vehicle.

The indicator light for the key always flashes when the remote control is used.

The range (red zones) ⇒ fig. 49 of the remote control is shown in the diagram. The maximum range depends on a number of circumstances.

When the batteries are running down the range is also reduced.

Opening and closing the vehicle

To **open**, place the key within the range, pointing towards the vehicle and briefly press the open button 🔓 ⇒ fig. 48 (1). The indicators flash twice. To ▶

lock the vehicle, press the lock button briefly ⇒ fig. 48 (2). The indicators flash once.

By pressing the lock button **twice** ⇒ page 78, fig. 48 (2) both the locking security mechanism (double lock) and the volumetric alarm* are deactivated but the perimetric alarm* remains active and this is indicated by the indicator light on the driver's door.

Selective unlocking*

When the button ⇒ page 78, fig. 48 (1) is used the driver's door is unlocked, all others remain locked.

Press the button ⇒ page 78, fig. 48 (1) twice to unlock all doors.

WARNING

- **Incorrect use of the key can result in critical injuries.**
- **Never leave children or disabled persons in the vehicle; in case of emergency they may not be able to leave the vehicle or look after themselves.**
- **Never leave any of the vehicle keys in the vehicle. This could result in serious injuries, accidents or the theft of your vehicle. Always take the key with you when you leave the vehicle.**
- **Unsupervised use of a key could mean that the engine is started or that electrical equipment is used (e.g. electric windows). Risk of accident. The vehicle can be locked using the remote control key. This could result in people being trapped in the vehicle in an emergency.**

Note

- The radio-frequency remote control can also be programmed so that only the driver's door is unlocked the first time that the unlocking button on the radio frequency remote control key is pressed. When the button is pressed once more, all doors and the tailgate will be unlocked.
- The remote control functions only when you are in range ⇒ page 78, fig. 49 (red area).
- If the vehicle is unlocked using the (1) button, the vehicle will be locked again automatically if any of the doors or the tailgate are not opened within 30 seconds of unlocking the vehicle. This function prevents the vehicle from remaining unlocked if the unlocking button is pressed by mistake.
- If the vehicle cannot be opened and closed using the remote control, the remote control key will have to be re-synchronised ⇒ page 79. ■

Changing the battery

If the battery indicator does not flash when the buttons are pushed, the battery must be replaced.

Caution

Use of inappropriate batteries may damage the radio frequency remote control. For this reason, always replace the dead battery with another of the same size and power.

For the sake of the environment

The flat batteries must be disposed of in accordance with regulations governing the protection of the environment. ■

Synchronising the remote control key

Synchronising the remote control key

– Use both keys that have been delivered with the vehicle; the key with the remote and the normal key ⇒ page 78, fig. 48 ⇒ page 78, fig. 49.

- **Maximum time allowed for synchronising is 30 seconds.**
- The normal key is used to activate the ignition, and the key with the remote control is the key to be programmed.
- Check that the car is open before commencing programming.
- Place the key without remote control in the contact inside the steering and ignition lock.
- Use the key with remote control and mechanically lock the vehicle from the driver's door.
- Open and close the driver's door lock mechanically, using the remote control key.
- At the same time press the button (1) on the remote control key.
- Complete the procedure by removing the key from the contact

It is possible that the vehicle could no longer be opened and closed with the remote control if the button is repeatedly pressed outside of the effective range of the radio frequency remote control. The remote control key will have to be resynchronised.

Spare remote control keys are available from Authorised Service Centres, they must be matched to the locking system. ■

Anti-theft alarm system*

Description of anti-theft alarm system*

The anti-theft alarm triggers an alarm if unauthorised movements are detected around the vehicle.

The anti-theft alarm makes it more difficult to break into the vehicle or steal it. Audible and visible alarms are triggered if the car is opened using the mechanical key, or if unauthorised access is gained to the vehicle.

The anti-theft alarm system is automatically switched on when the vehicle is locked. For this, either turn the key once in the lock towards the locking position or press button (2) on the radio-frequency remote control*. The system is activated immediately and the indicator light located on the driver's door will flash along with the indicators indicating that the alarm and the locking security system (double lock) have been turned on.

When the vehicle is locked the indicator lamps light up only if the alarm has been correctly activated (all the protection zones should be correctly closed).

If any of the doors or the bonnet are open, when the alarm is connected these will not be included in the protection zones of the vehicle. If the door or bonnet is subsequently closed, they will automatically be included in the vehicle protection zones and the indicators will flash accordingly.

When does the system trigger an alarm?

The alarm system is triggered, in the locked vehicle, when:

- a door
- the bonnet or
- the tailgate

are unduly opened

- or the ignition is switched on ▶

The horn sounds and the indicators flash for approx. 30 seconds.

How is the alarm switched off?

To deactivate the anti-theft alarm, rotate the key in the opening direction or press the button on the remote control.

- The indicator light flashes twice on opening and the alarm is deactivated.
- The indicator light flashes once on closing and the alarm is activated.

In vehicles equipped with an additional* alarm system, if the vehicle is opened using the driver's door key, you have 15 sec to insert the key in the ignition lock and activate the ignition. Otherwise, the alarm will go off for 30 sec. and the ignition will be blocked.

In vehicles with keys without remote control it is necessary to wait 30 seconds until the alarm stops. Then lock the vehicle using the key and repeat the above process.

If the vehicle is opened at any door other than the driver's door or the tailgate the alarm will go off for 30 seconds.

Note

- After 28 days the indicator light will switch off to prevent the battery running down where the vehicle has been left parked for a long period of time. The alarm system remains activated.
- If, after the alarm has stopped, attempts are made to open another protection zone, the alarm will be triggered again.
- The alarm system can be activated or deactivated using the remote control ⇒ page 78. ■

Volumetric sensor*

Monitoring or control function incorporated in the anti-theft alarm, that detects unauthorized vehicle entry using ultra-sound.*

The system consists of 3 sensors, 2 emitters and a receptor.

Activation

– It is automatically turned on with the anti-theft alarm, when the vehicle is locked mechanically with the key and when the button on the remote control is used.

Deactivation

– Open the vehicle with the key, either mechanically[3)] or by pressing the button on the remote control.

– Press the button on the remote control twice. Only the volumetric sensor is deactivated. The alarm system remains activated.

The interior monitoring system will be switched on automatically with the anti-theft alarm. All of the doors and the tailgate must be closed to activate the sensor of the interior monitoring system.

The interior monitor should be switched off, if for example animals are briefly left in the locked vehicle. Their movements could otherwise trigger an alarm.

The interior monitor should also be deactivated if the windows are left slightly open, otherwise the alarm may be triggered due to the effect caused by wind entering the vehicle. ▶

3) The time period from when the door is opened until the key is inserted in the contact should not exceed 15 sec., otherwise the alarm will be triggered.

Note

- If, after deactivating the volumetric sensor, the vehicle is locked using the remote control or the key in the door lock in under 30 seconds, the volumetric sensor will remain deactivated. The other functions of the antitheft alarm* will remain activated. After this time, the deactivation function of the volumetric sensor is cancelled.
- If the vehicle is relocked and the alarm is activated without the volumetric sensor function, relocking will activate the alarm with all its functions, except the volumetric sensor. This function is reactivated when the alarm is next switched on, unless it is deliberately switched off.
- If the alarm has been triggered by the volumetric sensor, this will be indicated by a flashing of the indicator on the driver's door. The flash is different to the flash indicating the alarm is activated.
- If the alarm is triggered three times by the volumetric sensor, the alarm system is no longer triggered.
- Triggering caused by other sensors (doors, boot opening, etc.) will continue ■

Tailgate

Opening and locking

The operation of the tailgate opening system is electric. It is activated by using the handle on the tailgate

Fig. 50 Tailgate: opening from the outside

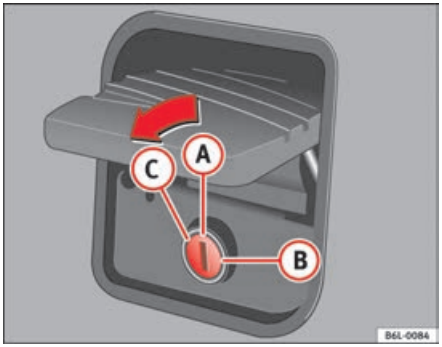

Fig. 51 Closing the tailgate

Opening the tailgate

– Pull on the release lever and lift the tailgate ⇒ fig. 50. The keyhole should now be in a vertical position ⇒ fig. 51 (A).

Closing the tailgate

– Grip the tailgate by the handle on the interior lining and close it, using a light movement.

When the keyhole (A) ⇒ fig. 51 is in a vertical position, the tailgate will open and lock automatically using the central locking system. Also, the tailgate may be opened and locked using a key.

When the keyhole is horizontal (B) ⇒ fig. 51, if the tailgate is closed it remains locked and can only be opened again using the main key.

To open the tailgate the key must be turned all the way (C) ⇒ fig. 51 in the direction of the arrow. In this position the key may not be removed from the lock.

If the keyhole is in horizontal position, this implies that the tailgate is locked and can only be opened using the main key.

WARNING

- **Always close the tailgate properly. Risk of accident or injury.**
- **Do not close the tailgate by pushing it down with your hand on the window. The glass could shatter. Risk of injury!**
- **Ensure the tailgate is locked after closing. If not, it may open unexpectedly while driving.**
- **Never allow children to play in or around the vehicle. A locked vehicle can be subjected to extremely high and low temperatures, depending on the time of year. This could cause serious injuries/illness. It could even have fatal consequences. Close and lock both the tailgate and all the other doors when you are not using the vehicle.**
- **Never close the tailgate without observing and ensuring it is clear, to do otherwise could cause serious injury to you and others. Make sure that no one is in the path of the tailgate.**
- **Never drive with the tailgate open or half-closed, exhaust gasses may penetrate into the interior of the vehicle. Danger of poisoning!**
- **If only the boot is opened then do not leave the key inside. The vehicle may not be opened if the key is left inside.** ■

Windows

Opening or closing the windows electrically*

The front and rear electric windows can be operated using the controls in the driver's door.

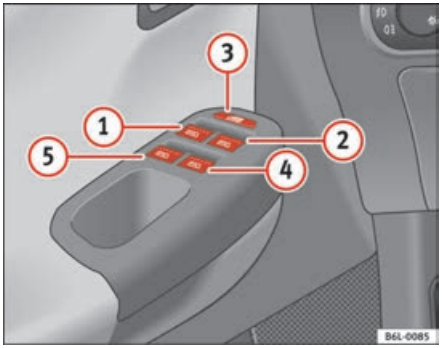

Fig. 52 Detail of driver door: controls for the front and rear windows

Opening and closing the windows

– Press the button to open a window.

– Pull button to close a window ⇒ ⚠.

Always close the windows fully if you park the vehicle or leave it unattended ⇒ ⚠.

You can use the electric windows for approx. 10 minutes after switching off the ignition if neither the driver door nor the front passenger door has been opened and the key has not been removed from the ignition. ▶

Buttons in the driver door

1 Button for window in front left door
2 Button for window in front right door

Buttons for rear windows*

3 Safety switch for deactivating the electric window buttons in the rear doors
4 Button for window in rear right door
5 Button for window in rear left door

Safety switch*

Safety switch 3 in the driver door can be used to disable the electric window buttons in the rear doors.

Safety switch not pressed: buttons on rear doors are activated.

Safety switch pressed: buttons on rear doors are deactivated.

WARNING

- **Incorrect use of the electric windows can result in injury.**
- **Never close the tailgate without observing and ensuring it is clear, to do otherwise could cause serious injury to you and others. Make sure that no one is in the path of a window.**
- **Always take the vehicle key with you when you leave the vehicle.**
- **Never leave children or disabled persons in the vehicle, particularly if they have access to the keys. Unsupervised use of a key could mean that the engine is started or that electrical equipment is used (e.g. electric windows). Risk of accident. The doors can be locked using the remote control key. This could result in people being trapped in the vehicle in an emergency.**
- **The electric windows will work until the key has been removed from the ignition and one of the front doors has been opened.**

WARNING (continued)

- **If necessary, use the safety switch to disable the rear electric windows. Make sure that they have been disabled.**

Note

If the window is not able to close because it is stiff or because of an obstruction, the window will automatically open again ⇒ page 86. If this happens, check why the window could not be closed before attempting to close it again. ■

One-touch opening and closing*

The one-touch opening and closing function is only possible on the front doors and can only be activated from the driver's door.

One-touch closing

– Pull up the button for the window briefly to the second position. The window closes fully.

One-touch opening

– Push down the button for the window briefly to the second position. The window opens fully.

Restoring one-touch opening and closing

– Close all windows. ▶

– Use the key to lock the vehicle from outside and hold the key in the lock position for at least one second. The one-touch function is now ready for operation.

The buttons ⇒ page 84, fig. 52 (1) and (2) have two levels for opening the window and two for closing it. This makes it easier to open or close windows to the desired position.

One-touch closing does not work when the ignition has been switched off, even if the key is in the ignition.

The automatic open and close function will not work if the battery has been temporarily disconnected, or if the battery is flat. The function then has to be reactivated.

The one-touch function and roll-back function will not work if there is a malfunction in the electric windows. Contact an Authorised Service Centre. ■

Roll-back function

The windows have a roll-back function. This reduces the risk of injuries when the windows are closing.

- If a window is obstructed when closing automatically, the window stops at this point and lowers immediately ⇒ ⚠.
- If this happens, check immediately (within 10 seconds) why the window could not be closed before attempting to close it again. After 10 seconds the normal automatic function resumes.
- If the window is still obstructed, the window stops at this point.
- If there is no obvious reason why the window cannot be closed, try to close it again within five seconds.

If you wait longer than 5 - 10 seconds, the window will open fully when you operate one of the buttons. One-touch closing is reactivated.

The one-touch function and roll-back function will not work if there is a malfunction in the electric windows. Contact an Authorised Service Centre.

⚠ WARNING

- **Incorrect use of the electric windows can result in injury.**
- **Always take the key with you when leaving the vehicle, even if you only intend to be gone for a short time. Please ensure that children are never left unsupervised in the vehicle.**
- **The electric windows will work until the key has been removed from the ignition and one of the front doors has been opened.**
- **Never close the tailgate without observing and ensuring it is clear, to do otherwise could cause serious injury to you and others. Make sure that no one is in the path of a window.**
- **Never allow people to remain in the vehicle when you close the vehicle from the outside. The windows cannot be opened even in an emergency.**

Note

The roll-back function is deactivated if the windows are closed from the outside of the vehicle using the ignition key for convenience closing ⇒ page 86. ■

Convenience opening and closing*

Using the door lock

– Hold the key in the door lock of the driver door in either the locking or the unlocking position until all windows are either opened or closed.

– Release the key to interrupt this function. ■

Vent wings*

The rear vent wings can be opened and closed manually.

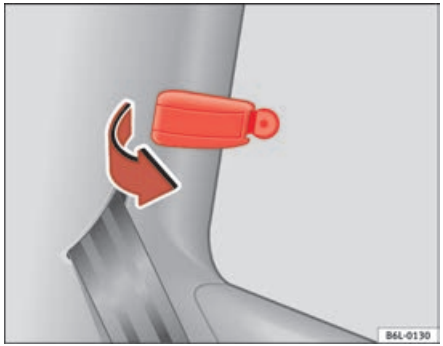

Fig. 53 Release lever for mechanical vent wing

Opening

– Pull the release lever ⇒ fig. 53 in the direction of the arrow and push it out at the same time until the lever engages. The lever inserts when the deflector is half open or fully open.

Closing

– Pull the release lever in the opposite direction to the arrow and push it back until the lever engages.

⚠ WARNING

- **Incorrect use of the vent wings can result in injury!**

⚠ WARNING (continued)

- **Never close the tailgate without observing and ensuring it is clear, to do otherwise could cause serious injury to you and others. Make sure that no one is in the path of a window.** ■

Sliding/tilting roof*

Opening and closing the sliding/tilting roof

The sliding/tilting sunroof is opened and closed using the rotary button when the ignition is switched on.

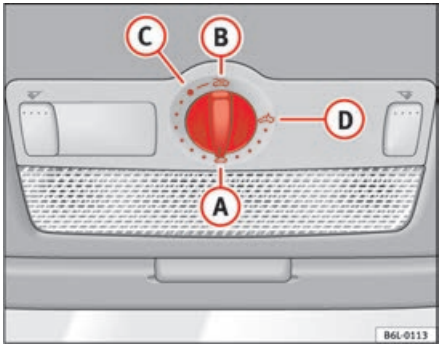

Fig. 54 Detail of the roof lining: rotary control for sliding sun roof/ deflector

Closing the sliding/tilting sunroof

– Turn the rotary button to position (A) ⇒ fig. 54 ⇒ ⚠. ▶

Opening/tilting the sliding/tilting sunroof

– Turn the rotary button to position (C). The sunroof opens to the convenience position where wind noise is reduced.

– To open the roof further, turn the switch to position (B) and hold the switch in this position until the roof opens to the desired position.

Tilting the sliding/tilting sunroof

– Turn the rotary button to position (D).

Always close the sliding/tilting roof fully if you park the vehicle or leave it unattended ⇒ ⚠.

The sliding/tilting sunroof can be operated for up to about ten minutes after the ignition has been switched off, provided the driver door and the front passenger door are not opened.

Sunroof blind

The sunroof blind is opened together with the sliding/tilting roof. If required, it can be closed by hand when the sunroof is closed.

⚠ WARNING

- **Incorrect use of the sliding/tilting sunroof can result in injury.**
- **Never close the sliding/tilting sunroof without observing and ensuring it is clear, to do otherwise could cause serious injury to you and others. Make sure that no one is in the path of the sliding/tilting sunroof.**
- **Always take the vehicle key with you when you leave the vehicle.**
- **Never leave children or disabled persons in the vehicle, particularly if they have access to the keys. Unsupervised use of a key could mean that the engine is started or that electrical equipment is used (e.g. electric sliding/tilting sunroof). Risk of accident! The doors can be locked using the**

⚠ WARNING (continued)

remote control key. This could result in people being trapped in the vehicle in an emergency.

- **The sliding/tilting sunroof continues to function until one of the front doors is opened and the key removed from the ignition.** ■

Convenience closing*

Using the door lock

– Hold the key in the door lock of the driver's door in the locking position until the sliding/tilting sunroof is closed.

– Release the key to interrupt this function.

Note

The sliding/tilting sunroof rotary button remains in the last position selected if the roof is closed using convenience closing from outside the vehicle and will have to be re-positioned the next time you drive. ■

Roll-back function of the sliding/tilting roof*

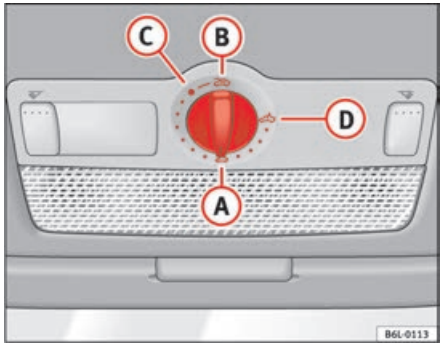

Fig. 55 Detail of the roof lining: rotary control for sliding sun roof/ deflector

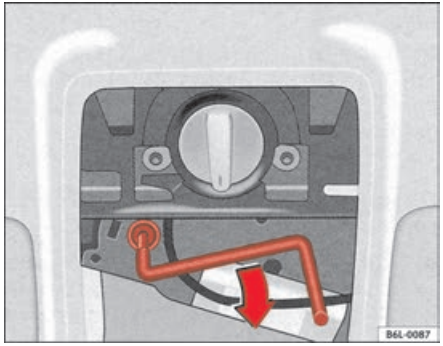

Fig. 56 Emergency closing handle

The sliding/tilting roof has a *roll-back function* which prevents larger objects getting trapped when the roof is closed. The roll-back function does not prevent fingers getting pinched against the roof opening. The sliding/tilting sunroof stops and opens again immediately if it is obstructed when closing.

If the sliding/tilting roof has been opened again by the roll-back function, it can be closed only by pressing the rotary button at the front in position (A) ⇒ fig. 55 until the sliding/tilting roof has closed fully. **Please note that the sunroof will now close without the roll-back function.**

Operation in the event of a breakdown

In the event of a breakdown, the sunroof may be closed manually.

- Remove the plastic cover by inserting a screwdriver in the rear section.
- Remove the lever from the cover fastening, insert it in the opening as far as possible (pushing against the spring) and close the sliding roof.
- Fit the lever back into position. ■

Lights and visibility

Lights

Switching lights on and off

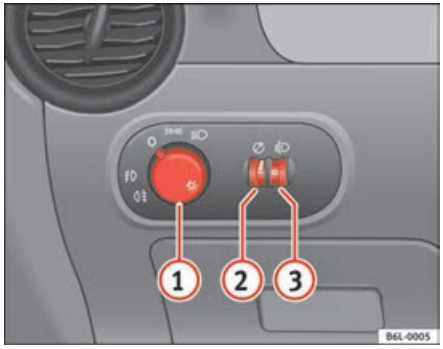

Fig. 57 Detail of the instrument panel: light controls, fog light and rear fog light control

Switching on the side lights

– Turn the light switch ⇒ fig. 57 to position .

Switching on dipped headlights

– Turn the light switch to position .

Switching off the lights

– Turn the light switch to position 0.

Switching on the fog lights*

– Turn the switch from position or to the first stop. The symbol in the light switch lights up.

Switching on the rear fog lights (vehicles with front fog lights)

– Turn the switch from position or to the second stop ⇒ . An indicator lamp on the switch itself lights up.

Switching on the rear fog lights (vehicles with no front fog lights)

– Turn the switch from position or to the end. An indicator lamp on the switch itself lights up.

WARNING

Never drive with just the side lights on. Risk of accident. The side lights are not bright enough to illuminate the road ahead and to ensure that other road users are able to see you. Always use your dipped headlights if it is dark or if visibility is poor.

Note

- The dipped beam headlights will only work with the ignition on. The side lights come on automatically when the ignition is turned off.
- If the lights are left on after the key has been taken out of the ignition lock, a buzzer sounds when the driver door is opened. This is a reminder to switch off the lights.

- The rear fog light is so bright that it can dazzle drivers behind you. You should use the rear fog light only when visibility is very poor.
- If you are towing a trailer equipped with a rear fog light on a vehicle with a factory-fitted *towing bracket*, the rear fog light on the car will automatically be switched off.
- The use of the lighting described here is subject to the relevant statutory requirements. ■

Instrument and switch lighting / Headlight range control

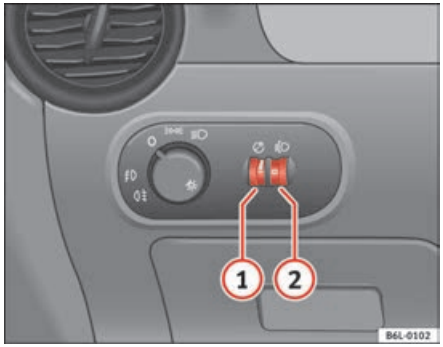

Fig. 58 Instrument panel: regulators for instrument and control illumination and headlight range control

Instrument and switch lighting (1)

When the headlights are switched on, the brightness of the instruments and switch lighting can be regulated to suit your requirements by turning the thumb wheel ⇒ fig. 58 (1).

Those vehicles fitted with xenon gas discharge headlights are fitted with an automatic headlight range system.

Headlight range control (2)

Using the electrical headlight range control, (2) you can adjust the headlight range to the load level that is being carried in the vehicle. In this way it is possible to avoid dazzling oncoming traffic more than necessary. At the same time, the driver has the best possible lighting for the road ahead using the correct headlight settings.

The headlights can only be adjusted when the dipped beam is switched on. To lower the beam, turn the thumb wheel down (2) from the basic setting **0**.

Dynamic headlight range control

Vehicles with **gas discharge lamps** (xenon lamps) **are equipped with dynamic headlight range control**. When you switch on the lights, their range is adjusted to suit the load level of the vehicle.

Vehicles with gas discharge lamps do not have headlight range control. ■

Rear window heating

Fig. 59 Instrument panel: heated rear window switch

The rear window heating only works when the engine is running. When it is switched on, a lamp lights up on the switch.

After 20 minutes, the heating device of the rear window switches off automatically. If the button is pushed again, after 20 minutes the rear window heater stays on continuously until the ignition is switched off.

For the sake of the environment

The rear window heater should be disconnected as soon as the glass is demisted. By saving electrical power you can also save fuel.

Note

To avoid possible damage to the battery, an automatic temporary disconnection of this function is possible, coming back on when normal operating conditions are re-established. ■

Hazard warning lights

The hazard warning lights are used to draw the attention of other road users to your vehicle in emergencies.

Fig. 60 Instrument panel: switch for hazard warning lights

If your vehicle breaks down:

1. Park your vehicle at a safe distance from moving traffic.
2. Press the button to switch on the hazard warning lights ⇒ ⚠.
3. Switch the engine off.
4. Apply the handbrake.
5. On a manual gearbox engage 1st gear, and for an automatic move the selector lever to **P**.
6. Use the warning triangle to draw the attention of other road users to your vehicle. ▶

7. Always take the vehicle key with you when you leave the vehicle.

You should switch on the hazard warning lights to warn other road users, for instance when:

- reaching the tail end of a traffic jam
- there is an emergency
- your vehicle breaks down due to a technical defect
- you are towing another vehicle or your vehicle is being towed.

All turn signals flash simultaneously when the hazard warning lights are switched on. That is that the two turn signal indicator lamps ⇦ ⇨ and the indicator lamp in the switch ⚠ will flash at the same time. The hazard warning lights also work when the ignition is switched off.

WARNING

- **The risk of an accident increases if your vehicle breaks down. Always use the hazard warning lights and a warning triangle to draw the attention of other road users to your stationary vehicle.**
- **Never park where the catalytic converter could come into contact with inflammable materials under the vehicle, for example dry grass or spilt petrol. This could start a fire!**

Note

- The battery will run down if the hazard warning lights are left on for a long time, even if the ignition is switched off.
- The use of the hazard warning lights described here is subject to the relevant statutory requirements. ■

Turn signal and main beam headlight lever

The turn signal and main beam lever also operates the parking lights and the headlight flasher.

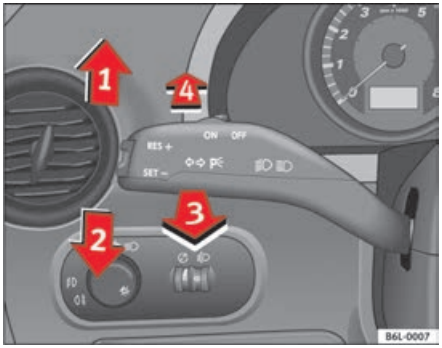

Fig. 61 Turn signal and main beam headlight lever

The turn signal and main beam headlight lever has the following functions:

Switching on the turn signals

– Move the lever all the way up ⇒ fig. 61 (1) to indicate **right**, and all the way down (2) to indicate **left**.

Signalling a lane change

– Push the lever up (1) or down (2) to the point where you incur resistance and then release the lever. The turn signal will flash several times. The corresponding warning lamp will also flash. ▶

Switching main beam on and off

– Turn the light switch to position ≡D.

– Press the lever forward ⇒ page 93, fig. 61 (4) to switch on the main beams.

– Pull the lever back towards you to switch the main beam headlights off again.

Headlight flasher

– Pull the lever towards the steering wheel (3) to operate the flasher.

Switching on parking lights

– Switch off the ignition and remove the key from the lock.

– Move the lever up or down to turn on the right or left-hand parking lights respectively.

WARNING

The main beam can dazzle other drivers. Risk of accident! Never use the main beam headlights or the headlight flasher if they could dazzle other drivers.

Note

- The *turn signals* only work when the ignition is switched on. The corresponding warning lamp ⇦ or ⇨ flashes in the combi-instrument. The warning lamp ⇦⇨ flashes when the turn signals are operated, provided a trailer is correctly attached and connected to the vehicle. If a turn signal bulb is defective, the warning lamp flashes at double speed. If the trailer turn signal bulbs are damaged, warning lamp ⇦⇨ does not light up. You should have the bulb replaced.
- The *main beam headlights* can only be switched on if the dipped beam headlights are already on. The warning lamp ≡D then comes on in the combi-instrument.
- The *headlight flasher* comes on for as long as you pull the lever – even if no other lights are switched on. The warning lamp ≡D then comes on in the combi-instrument.
- When the *parking lights* are switched on, the headlight and the rear light on the corresponding side of the vehicle light up. The parking lights will only work if the key is removed from the ignition. If the lights are switched on, a **buzzer** gives an audible warning while the driver door is open.
- If the turn signal lever is left on after the key has been taken out of the ignition lock, an acoustic signal sounds when the driver door is opened. This is a reminder to switch off the turn signal, unless of course you wish to leave the parking light on. ■

Interior lights

Front interior light

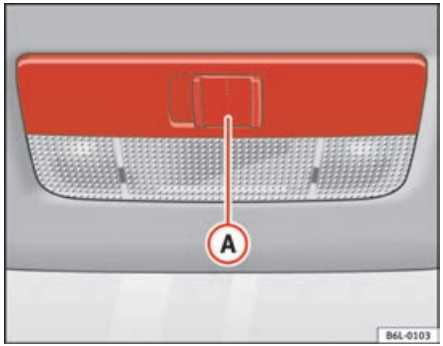

Fig. 62 Interior roof trim: front passenger compartment lights

The switch (A) ⇒ fig. 62 is used to select the following positions:

Courtesy light position

Sliding switch in central position The interior lights are automatically switched on when the vehicle is unlocked or the key removed from the ignition lock and turn off about 20 seconds after the closure of the doors. The interior lights are switched off when the vehicle is locked or when the ignition is switched on.

Interior light switched on

Move the knob to the position .

Interior light switched off O

Move the knob to the position O ⇒ fig. 62.

Note

If not all the vehicle doors are closed, the interior lights will be switched off after approx. 10 minutes, providing the key has been removed and the courtesy light position selected. This prevents the battery discharging. ■

Front reading light*

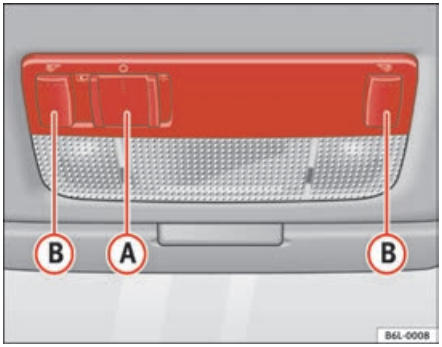

Fig. 63 Front reading light

Switching on the reading light

Press the corresponding button (B) ⇒ fig. 63 to switch on the reading light.

Switching off the reading lights

Press the corresponding button to switch off the reading light. ■

Glove box light*

The light in the glove box on the front passenger side will only light up if the lights are switched on and the glove box is open. ■

Boot light*

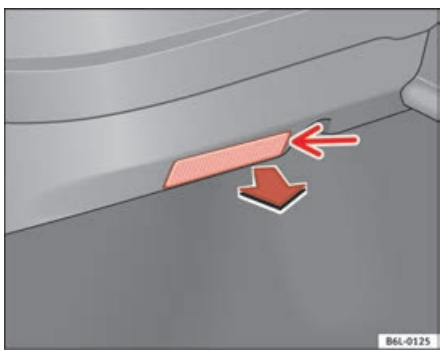

Fig. 64 Luggage compartment light

The light is activated when the tailgate is open, even when the ignition and lights are turned off. For this reason ensure that the tailgate is always closed. ■

Visibility

Sun visors

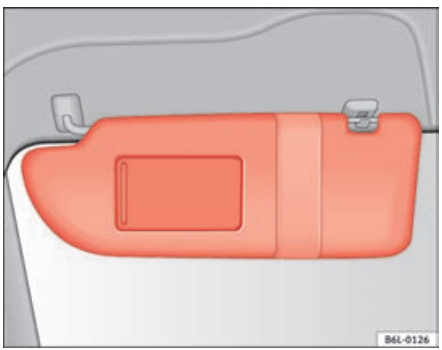

Fig. 65 Sun visor on the driver side

The sun visors for the driver and the front passenger can be pulled out of their mountings in the centre of the vehicle and turned towards the doors ⇒ fig. 65.

The sun shades are fitted with a courtesy mirror, its cover and a card holder. ■

Windscreen washers

Front windscreen wipers

The windscreen wiper lever controls the windscreen wipers and the automatic wash and wipe.

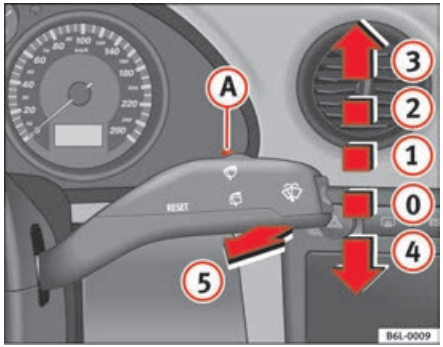

Fig. 66 Windscreen wiper and windscreen wash lever

The windscreen wiper lever ⇒ fig. 66 has the following positions:

Switching off the wipers

– Move the lever to position (0).

Intermittent wipe

– Move the lever up to position (1).

– Move the control (A) to the left or right to set the length of the intervals. Control to the left: long intervals; control to the right: short intervals. Four wiper interval stages can be set using switch (A).

Slow wipe

– Move the lever up to position (2).

Continuous wipe

– Move the lever up to position (3).

Brief wipe

– Move the lever down to position (4) to give the windscreen a *brief* wipe.

Wash and wipe automatic system

– Pull the lever towards the steering wheel - Position (5), the windscreen washer is activated.

– Return the lever back to the rest position. The wipers-washers will keep running for approximately four seconds.

The windscreen will be wiped again after approximately five seconds once the wipe/wash system has been operated.

WARNING

- **Worn and dirty wiper blades obstruct visibility and reduce safety levels.**
- **In cold conditions, you should not use the wash / wipe system unless you have warmed the windscreen with the heating and ventilation system. The washer fluid could otherwise freeze on the windscreen and obscure your view of the road.**

WARNING (continued)

- **Always note the corresponding warnings on ⇒ page 189.**

Caution

In icy conditions, always check that the wiper blades are not frozen to the glass before using the wipers for the first time. If you switch on the wipers when the wiper blades are frozen to the windscreen, you could damage both the wiper blades and the wiper motor.

Note

- The windscreen wipers will only work when the ignition is switched on.
- The heat output of the heated jets* is controlled automatically when the ignition is switched on, depending upon the outside temperature. ■

Rain sensor*

The rain sensor controls the frequency of the windscreen wiper intervals, depending on the amount of rain.

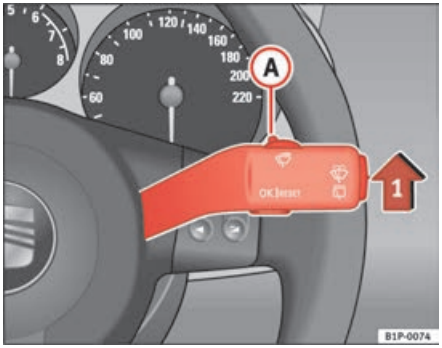

Fig. 67 Windscreen wiper lever

Switching on the rain sensor

– Move the windscreen wiper lever into position (1) ⇒ fig. 67.

– Move the control (A) to the left or right to set the sensitivity of the rain sensor. Control to the right: highly sensitive. Control to the left: less sensitive.

The rain sensor is part of the interval wipe function. You will have to switch the rain sensor back on if you switch off the ignition. This is done by switching the wiper intermittent function off and back on. ▶

Note

- Do not put stickers on the windscreen in front of the sensor. This may cause sensor disruption or faults. ■

Rear window wiper

The windscreen wiper lever operates the windscreen wiper and the wash and wipe system for the rear window.

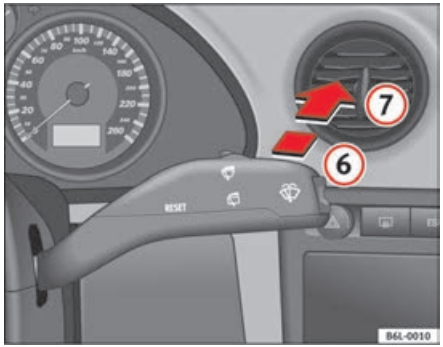

Fig. 68 Windscreen wiper and windscreen wash lever: rear window wiper

Switching on the interval wipe

– Press the lever forwards to position (6) ⇒ fig. 68. The wiper will wipe the window approximately every 6 seconds.

Switching off the interval wipe function

– Pull the lever back from position (6) towards the steering wheel. The wiper will continue to function for a short period if you switch off whilst the wipers are in motion.

Switching on the windscreen wiper and washer system

– Press the lever fully forwards to position (7) ⇒ fig. 68. The rear wiper and washer operate at the same time. The windscreen wash system will function as long as you hold the lever in this position.

– Return the lever back to the rest position. The washer system stops and the wipers continue until the end of the cycle.

– Move the lever towards the steering wheel to switch off.

WARNING

- **A worn or dirty wiper blade will obstruct visibility and reduce safety.**
- **Always note the corresponding warnings on ⇒ page 189.**

Caution

In icy conditions, always check that the wiper blade is not frozen to the glass before using the wiper for the first time. If you switch on the wiper when the wiper blade is frozen to the glass, this could damage both the wiper blade and the wiper motor.

Note

- The rear window wiper will only work when the ignition is switched on.
- Depending on the version of the model, when you engage reverse gear and with the headlight wiper activated, the lamps are wiped. ■

Headlight washer system

The headlight washers clean the headlight lenses.

The headlight washers are activated automatically when the windscreen washer is used and the windscreen wiper lever is pulled towards the steering wheel for at least 1.5 seconds – provided the dipped headlights or main beams are switched on. Clean off stubborn dirt (insects, etc.) from the headlights at regular intervals, for instance when filling the fuel tank.

Note

- To ensure that the headlight washers work properly in winter, keep the nozzle holders in the bumper free of snow and remove any ice with a de-icer spray.
- To remove water, the windscreen wipers will be activated from time to time, the headlight wipers will be activated every three cycles. ■

Windscreen

Atermic windscreen*

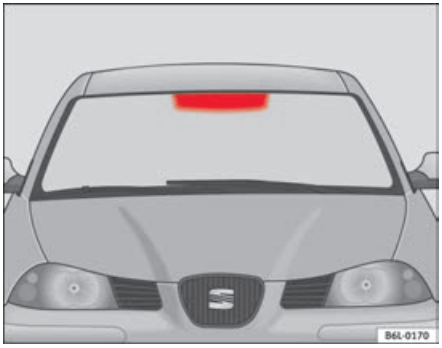

Fig. 69 Location of the electronic pricing device

Vehicles with athermic windscreens have a surface without the athermic treatment above the inside rear view mirror ⇒ fig. 69. This surface has been designed for the operation of electronic components of fitted devices (for example electronic pricing system).

Note

The customer should ensure that the electronic pricing device is fitted in the correct area for operation. ■

Rearview mirrors

Adjusting the head restraints

Before beginning any journey, adjust the rear-view mirrors for correct visibility. ■

Interior mirror

It is dangerous to drive if you cannot see clearly through the rear window.

Manual anti-dazzle function for interior mirror

In the basic mirror position, the lever at the bottom edge of the mirror should be at the front. Pull the lever to the back to select the anti-dazzle function. ■

Automatic anti-dazzle interior mirror*

The automatic anti-dazzle function can be switched on and off as desired.

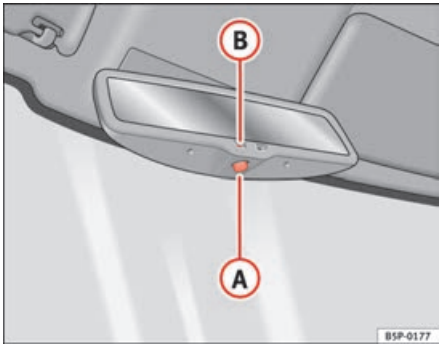

Fig. 70 Automatic anti-dazzle interior mirror.

Switching off anti-dazzle function

– Press button (A) ⇒ fig. 70. Warning lamp (B) goes out:

Switching on anti-dazzle function

– Press button (A) ⇒ fig. 70. Warning lamp is lit.

Anti-dazzle function

The anti-dazzle function is activated every time the ignition is switched on. The green indicator lamp lights up in the mirror housing.

When the anti-dazzle function is activated the interior mirror will darken **automatically** according to the amount of light it receives (for example from the headlights of a vehicle behind). The anti-dazzle function is cancelled if reverse gear is engaged. ▶

Note

- The automatic anti-dazzle function will only work properly if the sun blind* for the rear window is retracted and there are no other objects preventing light from reaching the interior mirror.
- If you have to stick any type of sticker on the windscreen, do not do so in front of the sensors. Doing so could prevent the anti-dazzle function from working well or even from working at all. ■

Folding in the wing mirrors

The wing mirrors of the vehicle may be folded in. For this, press the mirror housing towards the vehicle.

Note

Before washing the vehicle with an automatic car wash, fold in the mirrors to avoid damage. ■

Electric wing mirrors*

The exterior mirrors can be adjusted using the rotary knob in the centre console.

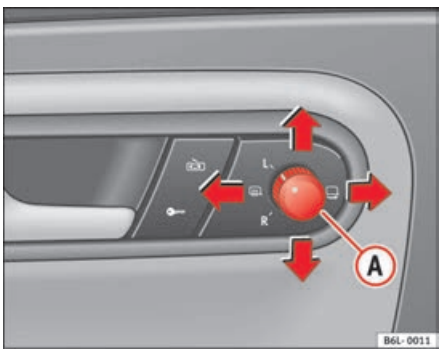

Fig. 71 Exterior mirror control

Basic setting of exterior mirrors

1. Turn knob ⇒ fig. 71 to position **L** (**left exterior mirror**).
2. Turn the rotary knob to position the mirror so that you have a good view to the rear of the vehicle.
3. Turn knob to position **R** (**right exterior mirror**).
4. Swivel the rotary knob to position the mirror so that you have a good view to the rear of the car ⇒ ⚠.

Heating the exterior mirrors*

– Turn the control to the demisting position ⇒ fig. 71. ▶

– Place the control in position L or R once the mirrors have demisted to prevent unnecessary use of the battery.

Folding in exterior mirrors*

– Turn the control ⇒ page 102, fig. 71 to position to fold in the exterior mirrors. You should always fold in the exterior mirrors if you are driving through an automatic car wash. This will help prevent damage.

Folding exterior mirrors back out to the extended position*

– Turn the knob to position L or R to fold the exterior mirrors back out ⇒ ⚠.

Synchronised wing mirror adjustment*

1. Turn the control to the position **L** (**left exterior mirror**).
2. Turn the rotary knob to position the mirror so that you have a good view to the rear of the vehicle. The **right exterior mirror** will be adjusted at the same time (synchronised).

WARNING

- **The rear view convex or aspheric mirror increase the field of vision however the objects appear smaller and further away in the mirrors. If you use these mirrors to estimate the distance to vehicles behind you when changing lane, you could make a mistake. Risk of accident.**
- **If possible, use the interior mirror to estimate distances to vehicles behind you.**
- **Make sure that you do not get your finger trapped between the mirror and the mirror base when folding back the mirrors. Risk of injury!**

For the sake of the environment

The exterior mirror heating should be switched off when it is no longer needed. Fuel is wasted otherwise.

Note

- If the electrical adjustment ever fails to operate, the mirrors can be adjusted by hand by lightly pressing the edge of the mirror glass.
- In vehicles with electric wing mirrors, the following points should be observed: if, due to an external force (e.g. a knock while manoeuvring), the adjustment of the mirror housing is altered, the mirror will have to be completely folded **electrically**. Do not readjust the mirror housing by hand, as this will interfere with the mirror adjuster function.
- The rear view mirrors can be adjusted separately or simultaneously, as described before. ■

Seats and stowage

The importance of correct seat adjustment

Proper seat adjustment optimises the level of protection offered by seat belts and airbags.

Your vehicle has **five** passenger places, two individual front seats and three places on the rear seat. Each seat is equipped with a three-point seat belt.

The driver seat and front passenger seat can be adjusted in many ways to suit the physical requirements of the vehicle occupants. The correct seat position is very important for:

- fast and easy operation of all controls on the instrument panel,
- relaxed posture that does not cause drowsiness,
- safe driving ⇒ page 7,
- and to ensure that the seat belts and airbag system provide maximum protection ⇒ page 16.

WARNING

- **If the driver and passengers assume improper sitting positions, they may sustain critical injuries.**
- **Never transport more people than there are seats available in the vehicle.**
- **Every occupant in the vehicle must properly fasten and wear the seat belt belonging to his or her seat. Children must be protected with an appropriate child restraint system ⇒ page 42, “Child safety”.**
- **The front seats and all head restraints must always be adjusted to body size and the seat belt must always be properly adjusted to provide you and your passengers with optimum protection.**

WARNING (continued)

- **Always keep your feet in the foot well when the vehicle is moving; never rest them on the dash panel, out of the window or on the seat. This also applies to passengers. An incorrect sitting position exposes you to an increased risk of injury in the event of a braking manoeuvre or an accident. If the airbag is triggered, you could sustain severe injuries due to an incorrect sitting position.**
- **It is important for the driver and front passenger to maintain a distance of at least 25 cm from the steering wheel or dash panel. Failure to respect the minimum distance means that the airbag will not protect you. Risk of fatal injury. The distance between the driver and the steering wheel or between the front passenger and the dash panel should always be as great as possible.**
- **Adjust the driver or front passenger seat only when the vehicle is stationary. Otherwise your seat could move unexpectedly while the vehicle is moving. This could increase the risk of an accident and therefore injury. In addition, while adjusting your seat, you will assume an incorrect sitting position. Risk of fatal accidents.**
- **Special guidelines apply to installing a child seat on the front passenger seat. When installing a child seat, observe the warning note in the ⇒ page 42, “Child safety”.** ■

Head restraints

Correct adjustment of head restraints

Properly adjusted head restraints are an important part of occupant protection and can reduce the risk of injuries in most accident situations.

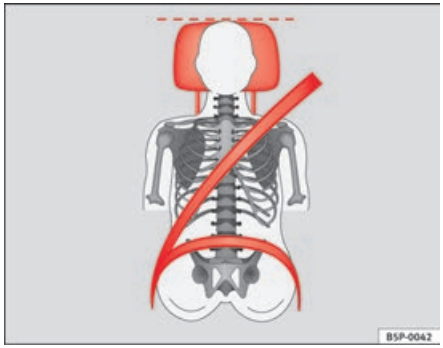

Fig. 72 Front view: head restraints and seat belts correctly adjusted

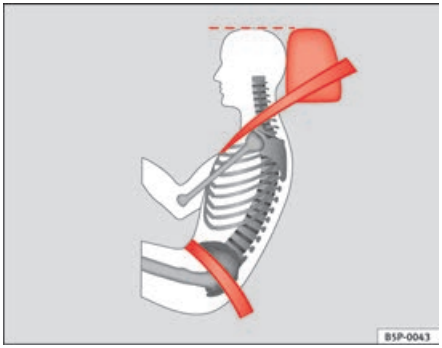

Fig. 73 Side view: head restraints and seat belts correctly adjusted

– Adjust the head restraint so that its upper edge is at the same level as the top of your head, or as close as possible to the same level as the top of your head and, as a very minimum at eye level ⇒ fig. 72 and ⇒ fig. 73.

Adjusting the head restraints ⇒ page 106.

WARNING

- **Travelling with the head restraints removed or improperly adjusted increases the risk of severe injuries.**
- **Improperly adjusted head restraints could lead to death in the event of a collision or accident.**
- **Incorrectly adjusted head restraints also increase the risk of injury during sudden or unexpected driving or braking manoeuvres.**
- **The head restraints must always be adjusted according to the occupant's size.** ■

Removing or adjusting head restraints

The head restraints can be adjusted by moving them up and down.

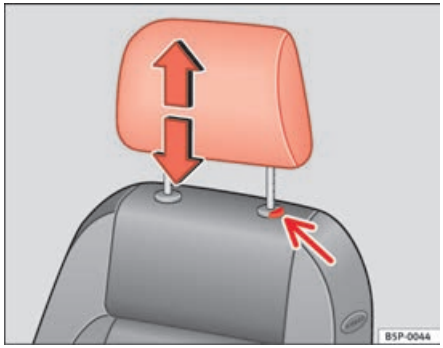

Fig. 74 Adjusting and removing the head restraints

Adjusting height (front seats)

– Press the button on the side and pull upwards to the desired position.

– To lower the head restraint, press the button and push head restraint downwards.

– Make sure that it engages securely into position.

Adjust height (rear outer seats)

– Press the button on the side and pull upwards or downwards to the desired position.

– Make sure that the head restraint engages securely in one of its positions.

Adjusting height (rear central seat)

– Press the button on the side and pull upwards to the desired position.

– To lower the head restraint, press the button and push head restraint downwards.

– Make sure that the head restraint engages securely in one of its positions ⇒ page 13.

Angle adjustment (front seats)

– Press the head restraint forward or back to the required position.

Removing the head restraint

– Push the head restraint up as far as it will go.

– Press the button ⇒ fig. 74 (arrow).

– Pull head restraint out of fitting without releasing the button.

Fitting the head restraint

– Insert the head restraint into the guides on the rear backrest.

– Push head restraint down.

– Adjust the head rest to suit body size ⇒ page 12.

WARNING

- **Never drive if the head restraints have been removed. Risk of injury.**

WARNING (continued)

- **Never drive if the head restraints are in an unsuitable position, there is a risk of serious injury.**
- **After refitting the head restraint, you must always adjust it properly for height to achieve optimal protection.**
- **Please observe the safety warnings ⇒ page 105, "Correct adjustment of head restraints".**

Note

- To fit and remove the rear head restraints, gently tilt the seat back forwards.
- When fitting the head restraints again, insert the tubes as far as possible into the guides without pressing the button. ■

Front seats

Adjustment of the front seats

Fig. 75 Front left seat controls

(1) To fold and unfold the seat back* (for two-door vehicles without the function Easy - Entry*)[4]

– To **fold** the seat back down, pull the lever (2) upwards, in the direction of the arrow and push the seat back forwards.

– To **unfold** the seatback, push it back. ▶

[4] Easy-entry function

(1) To fold and unfold the seat back* (for two-door vehicles with the function Easy - Entry*)[4)]

– To **fold** the seat back down, pull the lever (2) upwards, in the direction of the arrow and push the seat back forwards. You can push the seat forwards at the same time to make entry to the rear seats easier.

– To **unfold** the seat back, first move the seat **completely** back.

(2) Adjusting the seat forwards and backwards

– Pull up the grip and move the seat forwards or backwards.

– Then release the grip (1) and move the seat further until the catch engages.

(3) Adjusting the seat height*

– Pull the lever up or push down (several times if necessary) from its home position. This adjusts the seat height in stages.

(4) Adjusting the backrest angle

– Take your weight off the backrest and turn the hand wheel.

The Easy-Entry function facilitates the access to the vehicle rear seats. Before lifting the seat back, return the seat to the original position. The seat inserts when the seat back is lifted.

WARNING

- **Never adjust the driver or front passenger seat while the vehicle is in motion. While adjusting your seat, you will assume an incorrect sitting position. Risk of fatal accidents. Adjust the driver or front passenger seat only when the vehicle is stationary.**

WARNING (continued)

- **To reduce the risk of injury to the driver and front passenger during sudden braking manoeuvres or an accident, never drive with the backrest tilted far to the rear. The maximum protection of the seat belt can be achieved only when the backrests are in an upright position and the driver and front passenger have properly adjusted their seat belts. The further the backrests are tilted to the rear, the greater the risk of injury due to improper positioning of the belt web!**
- **Exercise caution when adjusting the seat height or forwards/backwards position. Injuries can be caused if the backrest is tilted without due care and attention.** ■

Heated seats*

The front seat cushions and backrests can be heated electrically.

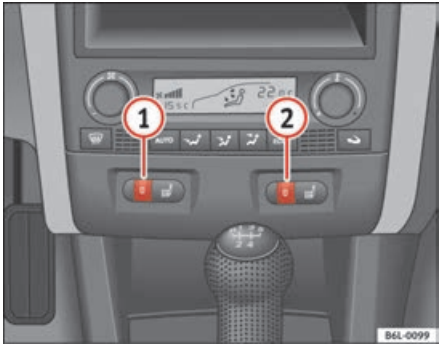

Fig. 76 Thumb wheel for the front seat heating ▶

– Turn the appropriate thumb wheel ⇒ page 108, fig. 76 to switch on the seat heating. The seat heating is switched off in the **0** position.

The seat heating only works when the ignition is switched on. The left thumb wheel controls the left seat and the right thumb wheel the right seat.

Caution

To avoid damaging the heating elements, please do not kneel on the seat or apply sharp pressure at a single point to the seat cushion and backrest. ■

Rear seat bench

Folding down rear seats

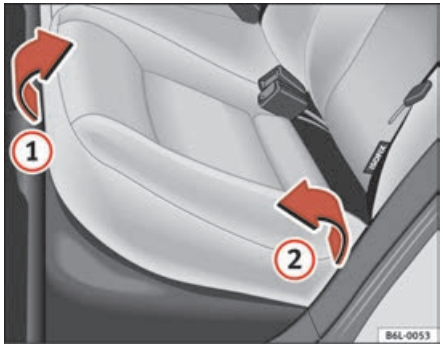

Fig. 77 Folding up the rear seat cushion

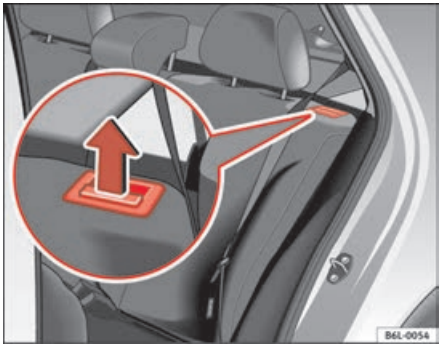

Fig. 78 Button for unlocking the rear back-rest

Folding seat down

– Remove the head restraint ⇒ page 106.

– Pull the front edge of the seat cushion ⇒ fig. 77 (1) upwards in the direction of the arrow.

– Lift the cushion (2) forwards in the direction of the arrow.

– Pull the release button ⇒ fig. 78 in the direction of the arrow and fold the backrest forwards

– Insert the head restraints in their corresponding fastenings.

Folding seat forward

– Remove the head restraints from their fastening on the seat cushion.

– Lift the backrest until it correctly engages in the catches.

– Check that it has engaged correctly. ▶

– Replace the rear head restraints ⇒ page 106.

– Lower the cushion and push it backwards below the seatbelt buckles.

– Press the front part of the cushion downwards.

On split rear seats [5] the backrest and cushion can be lowered and raised respectively in two sections.

WARNING

- **Please be careful when folding back the backrest! Injuries can be caused if the backrest is tilted without due care and attention.**
- **Do no trap or damage seatbelts when raising the backrest.**
- **After raising the backrest, check it has engaged properly in position.**
- **The three point automatic seat belt only works correctly when the backrest of the central seat is correctly engaged.** ■

[5] Optional equipment

Stowage compartments

Stowage compartment on the front passenger side

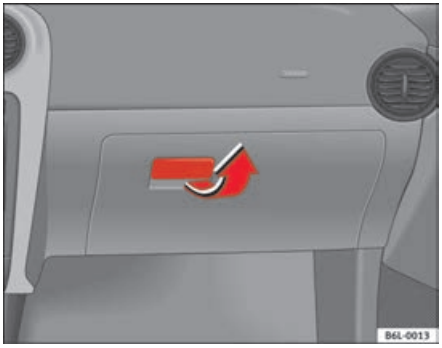

Fig. 79 Passenger side: stowage compartment

The compartment can be opened by pulling the lever ⇒ fig. 79.

WARNING

Always keep the stowage compartment cover closed while the vehicle is in motion to reduce the risk of injury during a sudden braking manoeuvre or in the event of an accident. ■

Object compartment, driver's side

There is an object compartment on the driver's side

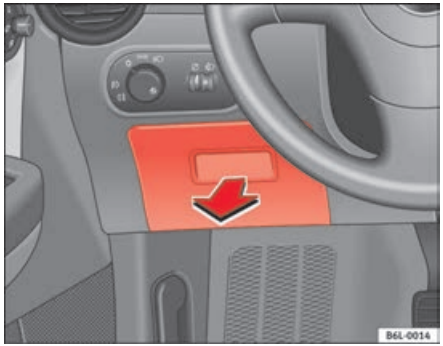

Fig. 80 Driver's side compartment

To open the compartment, pull outwards ⇒ fig. 80. ■

Stowage drawer under front right seat*

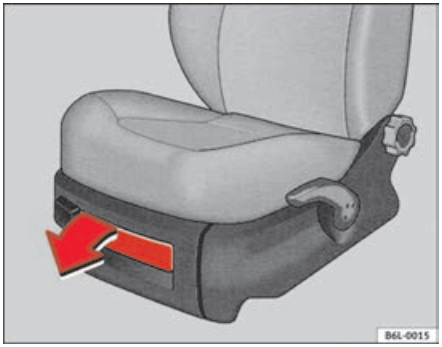

Fig. 81 Stowage compartment under the front passenger seat

To open

– Press button and pull outwards, holding it with a hand.

To close

– Press inwards until it engages. ■

Seat storage pocket*

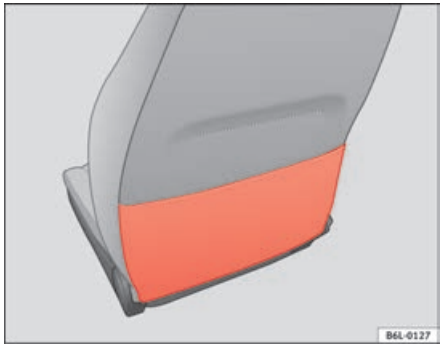

Fig. 82 Seat storage pocket

There is a storage pocket on the rear of the front seats. ■

Front cup holder*

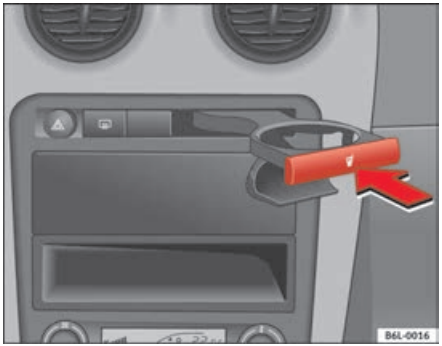

Fig. 83 Front cup holder in the centre console

To open

– Press on the edge of cup holder, this opens with a spring action.

To close

– Press the cup holder until it is completely closed.

WARNING

- **Never place hot drinks in the drink holders. During normal or sudden driving manoeuvres, sudden braking or an accident, the hot drink could be spilled. Danger of scalding.**
- **Never use rigid materials (for example, glass or ceramic), these could cause injury in the case of an accident.**
- **When travelling the drinks holder should always be closed to prevent risk in the event of sudden breaking or accident.** ■

Rear cup holder*

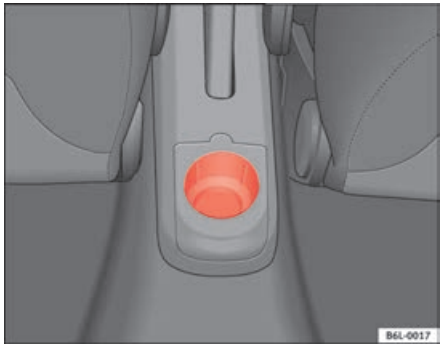

Fig. 84 Cup holder in the centre console

On the rear part of the centre console, behind the hand brake, there is a drinks holder installed* ⇒ fig. 84. ■

Ashtrays, cigarette lighter and electrical sockets

Front ashtray

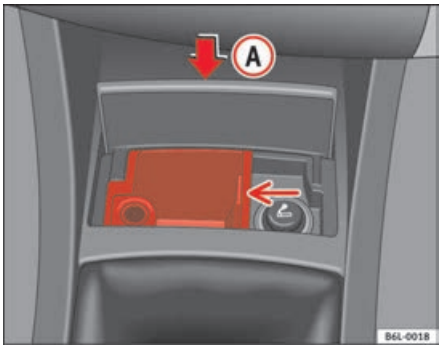

Fig. 85 Front ashtray

Opening

– Press the lower part of the ashtray cover (A) ⇒ fig. 85 and it will open automatically with a spring action.

Emptying the ashtray

– Hold the ashtray on the right-hand side and pull upwards.

Replacement

– Push ashtray into holder. ▶

Closing

– Move the ashtray cover towards the gear stick until it engages.

WARNING

Never put paper in the ashtray. Hot ash could ignite the paper in the ashtray. ■

Cigarette lighter

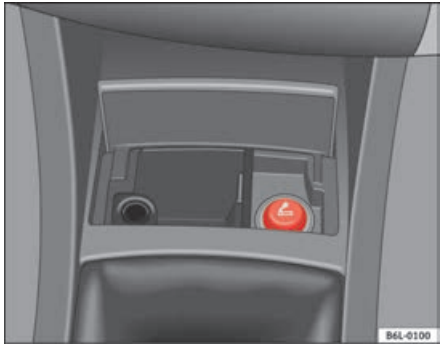

Fig. 86 Cigarette lighter

– Press on the cigarette lighter ⇒ fig. 86 to activate it ⇒ ⚠.

– Wait for the lighter to pop out slightly.

– Pull out the cigarette lighter and light the cigarette on the glowing coil.

WARNING

- **Improper use of the cigarette lighter can lead to serious injuries or start a fire.**
- **Take care when using the cigarette lighter. Carelessness or negligence when using the cigarette lighter can cause burns, risk of injury.**
- **The lighter works when the ignition is turned on or the engine is running. To avoid the risk of fire, never leave children unsupervised in the vehicle.** ■

Electrical sockets

The 12 Volt cigarette lighter socket can also be used for other electrical components with a power rating of up to 120 Watt. When the engine is switched off, however, the vehicle battery will discharge. Further information ⇒ page 171.

WARNING

The current sockets and the connected accessories will only operate when the ignition is on or when the engine is running. Improper use of the sockets or electrical accessories can lead to serious injuries or cause a fire. To avoid the risk of injury, never leave children unsupervised in the vehicle.

Note

- Using electrical appliances with the engine switched off will drain the battery.
- Before using any electrical accessories, see the instructions on ⇒ page 171. ■

Auxiliary audio input connector (AUX-IN)

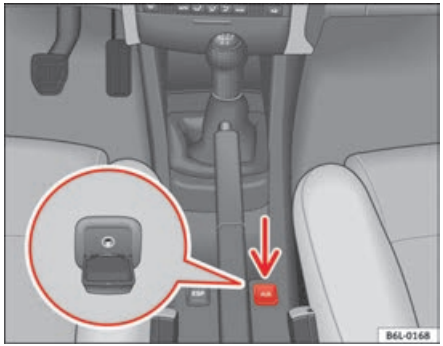

Fig. 87 Auxiliary audio connection

– Lift the AUX. cover ⇒ fig. 87.

– Insert the pin fully (see the radio manual). ■

Connector for Apple iPod®*

The iPod® connector is located in the glove box on the passenger side.

Fig. 88 iPod connection in glove box on passenger side

For information about operating this device, consult the Radio Manual. ■

USB connection*

In the glove box on the passenger side there is a USB port.

Fig. 89 USB connection* in glove box on passenger side

For information about operating this device, consult the Radio Manual. ■

First-aid kit, warning triangle, fire extinguisher*

First-aid kit, warning triangle and fire extinguisher

The use of reflective warning triangles is obligatory in emergencies in some countries. As are the first aid kit and a set of spare lightbulbs.

The first-aid kit and the fire extinguisher are located in the luggage compartment, in the side compartments and held in place by Velcro.

The warning triangle may be located in the rear of the luggage compartment held in place by rubber bands.

Note

- The first aid kit, the warning triangles and the fire extinguisher are not supplied with the vehicle as standard.
- The first aid kit, the warning triangles and the fire extinguisher should meet legal requirements.
- The expiry date of the content of the first aid kit should be checked.
- Ensure that the fire extinguisher is fully functional. The fire extinguisher should, therefore, be checked regularly. The sticker on the fire extinguisher will inform you of the next date for checking.
- Before acquiring accessories and emergency equipment see the instructions on ⇒ page 171, “Accessories, parts replacement and modifications”. ■

Luggage compartment

Stowing luggage

All luggage must be securely stowed.

Please observe the following points to ensure the vehicle handles well at all times:

– Distribute the load as evenly as possible.

– Place heavy objects as far forward in the luggage compartment as possible. ▶

WARNING

- **Loose luggage and other loose items in the vehicle can cause serious injuries.**
- **Loose objects in the luggage compartment can suddenly move and change the way the vehicle handles.**
- **During sudden manoeuvres or accidents, loose objects in the passenger compartment can be flung forward, injuring vehicle occupants.**
- **Always put objects in the luggage compartment.**
- **When you transport heavy objects, always keep in mind that a change in the centre of gravity can also cause changes in vehicle handling.**
- **Please observe information on safe driving ⇒ page 7, "Safe driving".**

Caution

Hard objects on the shelf could chafe against the wires of the heating element in the rear window and cause damage.

Note

The ventilation slots in front of the rear side windows must not be covered as this would prevent stale air being extracted from the vehicle. ■

Luggage compartment cover

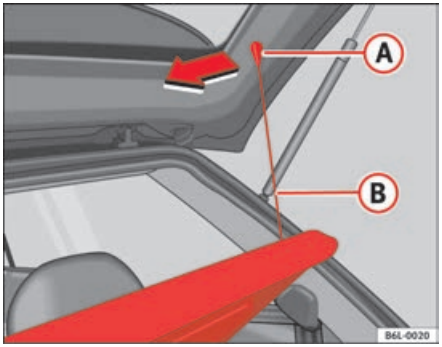

Fig. 90 Luggage compartment cover

Removing the cover

– Disengage the loops ⇒ fig. 90 (B) from the retaining pins (A)

– Extract the cover from its slot, in its rest position and pull outwards.

WARNING

Do not place heavy or hard objects on the luggage compartment cover, this will endanger the vehicle occupants in case of sudden braking.

Caution

- Before closing the tailgate, ensure that the stowage compartment tray is correctly fitted.

- An overloaded boot could mean that the rear stowage tray is not correctly seated and it may be bent or damaged.
- If the boot is overloaded we recommend removing the tray.

Note

- Ensure that, when placing items of clothing on the luggage compartment cover, rear visibility is not reduced. ■

Roof carrier*

Please observe the following points if you intend to carry loads on the roof:

- For safety reasons, only luggage racks and accessories approved by SEAT should be used.
- It is imperative to precisely follow the fitting instructions included for the rack, taking special care when fitting the front bar in the holes designed for this and the rear bar between the marks on the upper part of the rear door frame while respecting the correct direction of travel indicated in the installation manual. Not following these instructions may lead to paintwork damage or marks on the bodywork.
- Pay special attention to the tightening torque of the attachment bolts and check them following a short journey. If necessary, retighten the bolts and check them at regular intervals.
- Distribute the load evenly. A maximum load of 40 kg only is permitted for each roof carrier system support bar, the load must be distributed evenly over the entire length. However, the maximum load permitted for the entire roof (including the support system) of 75 kg must not be exceeded nor should the total weight of the vehicle be exceeded. See the chapter on “Technical Data”.
- When transporting heavy or large objects on the roof, any change in the normal vehicle behaviour due to a change in the centre of gravity or an increased wind resistance must be taken into account. For this reason, a suitable speed and driving style must be used.
- For those vehicles fitted with a sunroof*, ensure that it does not interfere with the load on the roof carrier system when opened. ■

Heating, Ventilation and Air conditioning

Heating and ventilation

Controls

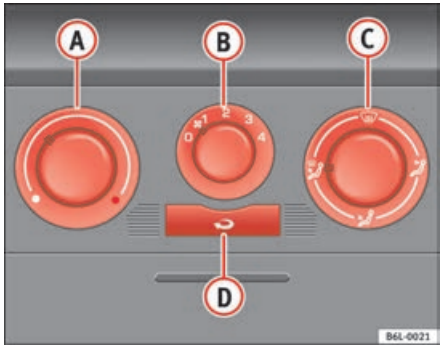

Fig. 91 On the dash panel: Heater controls

– Using the controls ⇒ fig. 91 (A) and (C) and with the switch (B) you can set the temperature, air distribution and the blower speed.

– Press the button (D) to switch air recirculation mode on or off. A button is illuminated by a yellow lamp for as long as the function is switched on.

Temperature

Switch (A) sets the temperature. The required temperature inside the vehicle cannot be lower than the ambient temperature. Maximum heat output, which is needed to defrost the windows quickly, is only available when the engine has reached its operating temperature.

Blower

The air flow can be set at four speeds with switch (B). The blower should always be set at the lowest speed when driving slowly.

Air distribution

Control (C) for setting the flow of air in the required direction.

– Air distribution towards the windscreen. Air recirculation is, for safety reasons, **not** possible in this position.

– Air distribution to the upper body.

– Air distribution to footwell

– Air distribution to the windscreen and the footwell.

Air recirculation mode

Air recirculation (D) on (button symbol lights up) prevents strong odours in the outside air from entering the vehicle interior, for example when driving through a tunnel or queuing in traffic ⇒ ⚠.

When the outside temperature is low, using air recirculation mode provides more effective heating by heating air from the vehicle interior instead of cold air from outside.

⚠ WARNING

- **For your safety, the windows should never be fogged up or covered with snow or ice. This is essential to ensure good visibility. Please familiarise yourself with the correct operation of the heating and ventilation system, including the demist/defrost functions for the windows.**

WARNING (continued)

- **In air recirculation mode, no ambient air enters the vehicle interior. The windows can quickly fog over if the heating is switched off. Therefore, you should never leave the air recirculation mode switched on for longer periods, as this increases the risk of an accident.**

Note

- Please observe the general notes ⇒ page 128. ■

Vehicle ventilation or heating

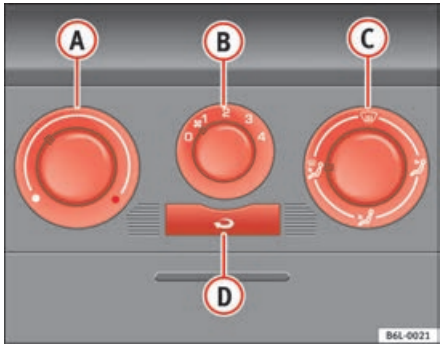

Fig. 92 On the dash panel: Heater controls

Ventilating the passenger compartment

– Turn the temperature selector ⇒ fig. 92 (1) anti-clockwise.

– Turn blower switch (7) to speed settings 1-4.

– Set the airflow to the desired direction using air distribution control (C).

– Open the relevant air outlets.

Heating the interior

– Turn the temperature selector ⇒ fig. 92 (A) clockwise to select the required temperature.

– Turn blower switch (7) to speed settings 1-4.

– Set the airflow to the desired direction using air distribution control (C).

– Open the relevant air outlets.

Defrosting the windscreen

– Turn the temperature selector ⇒ fig. 92 (A) clockwise to the maximum temperature.

– Turn the blower switch (B) to setting 4.

– Set air distribution to ⊞.

– Close outlet (3).

– Open and turn outlet (4) towards side windows

Demisting the windscreen and the side windows

– Turn the temperature selector ⇒ fig. 92 (A) to the heating zone.

– Turn blower switch (7) to speed settings 2-3.

– Set air distribution to ⊞.

▶

– Close outlets (3).

– Open and turn outlets (4) towards side windows

When the windows are demisted and as a preventive measure, the switch (C) can be set in position , thus obtaining greater comfort while preventing the windows from misting again.

Heating system

Maximum heat output, which is needed to defrost the windows quickly, is only available when the engine has reached its operating temperature.

Note

Remember that the temperature of the engine coolant should be optimum to ensure that the heating system functions correctly (except in vehicles fitted with additional heating*). ■

Air outlets

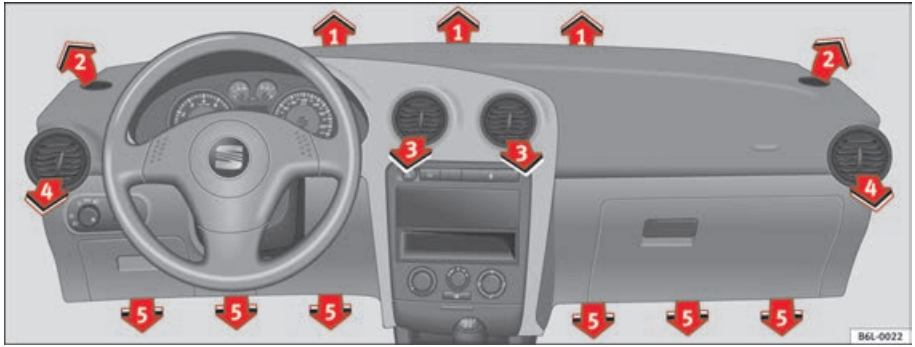

Fig. 93 Air vent

Air distribution (C)

Switch on symbol	Main air output through outlets:
	1,2
	5
	1, 2, 5
	3, 4

The outlets (3) and (4) can be closed or opened separately and the air flow directed according to need.

Air vent closed: operating lever vertical.

Air vent open: operating lever horizontal.

Swivelling the outlet with the operating lever, it is possible to direct the air output as desired. ■

Air conditioning*

Controls

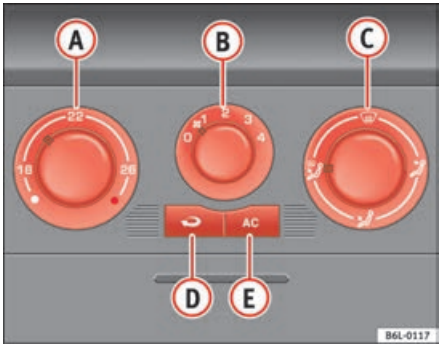

Fig. 94 On the instrument panel: air conditioner controls

The air conditioning system only works when the engine is running and the fan is switched on.

– Using the controls ⇒ fig. 94 (A) and (C) and with the switch (B) you can set the temperature, air distribution and the blower speed.

– To switch a function on or off, press the appropriate button (D) or (E). When the function is activated, a warning light on the button comes on.

– **To demist the wind screens:**

– Set air distribution to .

▶

– Turn the fan control to one of the two levels depending on the speed required.

– Rotate the temperature control to the desired level.

– Close outlets (3).

– Open and turn outlets (4) towards side windows

(A) Temperature selector ⇒ page 123
(B) Blower control. There are four speed settings for the blower. The blower should always be set at the lowest speed when driving slowly.
(C) Air distribution control ⇒ page 123
(D) Air recirculation button ⇒ page 124
(E) Button AC – Coolant on button ⇒ page 123

WARNING

For your safety, the windows should never be fogged up or covered with snow or ice. This is essential to ensure good visibility. Please familiarise yourself with the correct operation of the heating and ventilation system, including the demist/defrost functions for the windows.

Note

Please observe the general notes. ■

Vehicle interior heating or cooling system

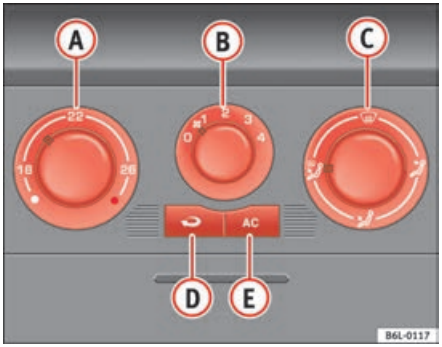

Fig. 95 On the instrument panel: air conditioner controls

Heating of the vehicle interior

– Disconnect the cooling system using button ⇒ fig. 95 AC (the button light goes off).

– Turn the temperature selector (A) to set the desired temperature.

– Turn the blower switch to one of the settings 1-4.

– Set the air distribution control (C) to the air flow configuration desired: (towards the windscreen), (towards the chest), (towards the foot rest) and (towards the windscreen and foot rest areas).

Cooling the passenger compartment

– Connect the cooling system with button AC (the button light *should* light up).

– Turn the temperature control switch until the desired interior temperature is obtained.

– Turn the blower switch to one of the settings 1-4.

– Set the air distribution control to the air flow configuration desired: (towards the windscreen), (towards the chest), (towards the foot rest) and (towards the windscreen and foot rest areas).

Heating system

Maximum heat output, which is needed to defrost the windows quickly, is only available when the engine has reached its operating temperature.

Cooling system

When the cooling system is switched on, not only the temperature, but also the air humidity in the vehicle interior is reduced. This improves comfort for the vehicle occupants and prevents misting of the windows when the outside air humidity is high.

If the cooling system cannot be switched on this may be due to the following reasons:

- the engine is not running.
- The blower is switched off.
- The outside temperature is lower than +5°C.
- the cooling system compressor has been temporarily switched off because the engine coolant temperature is too high.
- The air conditioner fuse is faulty.
- Another fault in the vehicle. Have the air conditioner checked by a qualified workshop. ■

Air recirculation

Air recirculation mode prevents fumes or unpleasant smells from entering the vehicle.

When air recirculation mode is switched on (button ⇒ page 123, fig. 95 with warning lamp) strong odours in the outside air do not enter the vehicle interior, for example when passing through a tunnel or in queuing traffic.

When the outside temperature is low, using air recirculation mode provides more effective heating by heating air from the vehicle interior instead of cold air from outside.

When the outside temperature is high, using air recirculation mode provides more effective cooling by cooling air from the vehicle interior instead of warm air from outside.

For reasons of safety, air recirculation is **not** possible when the control for air distribution is set to the windscreen setting .

WARNING

In air recirculation mode, no ambient air enters the vehicle interior. If the air conditioning system is switched off, the windows can quickly mist over. Therefore, you should never leave the air recirculation mode switched on for longer periods, as this increases the risk of an accident.

Note

- When reverse gear is engaged the air recirculation connects automatically to prevent the entrance of exhaust fumes in the vehicle on travelling backwards. The control light on the button does not light up.
- If the temperature control is turned to the coldest setting (blue point) and the switch AC is activated, the “Air recirculation” function is automatically activated in order to cool the passenger compartment rapidly using a minimum of energy and the function indicator will light. ▶

- If the function is not deactivated by pressing the button, this will be deactivated after about 20 mins. ■

Economic use of the air conditioning

When the air conditioning is switched on, the compressor consumes engine power and has an effect on fuel consumption. Observe the following points in order to have the equipment operating for a short a time as possible.

- If the vehicle interior has overheated due to excessive solar radiation, it is best to open the windows or doors to allow the hot air to escape.
- When travelling the air conditioning should not be switched on if the windows or sun roof are open.* ■

Climatronic

Control switches

Fig. 96 On the instrument panel: Climatronic controls

The air conditioning system only works when the engine is running and the blower is switched on.

– Turn the temperature selector ⇒ page 125, fig. 96 (10) to set the desired temperature.

– The functions will be switched on when the buttons are pressed. When the function is activated, a symbol is displayed on the screen. Press the button again to switch off the function.

(1) Blower speed control and ON / OFF system.
(2) Blower level indicator
(3) Outside temperature display
(4) Defrost windscreen display
(5) Air recirculation display:
(6) Display for air flow direction
(7) Display **AUTO** (automatic operation)
(8) Interior temperature selected display
(9) Display **ECON** (air conditioning off)
(10) Interior temperature selector.
(11) Button – defrost function for the windscreen. The air drawn in from outside the vehicle is directed at the windscreen. The air recirculation mode, if switched on, will be switched off as soon as the defrost function is switched on. At temperatures over 3°C, the air conditioning system will be switched on automatically and the blower speed will be increased by one level in order to dry the air.
(12) Button AUTO – Automatic temperature, ventilation and air distribution control ⇒ page 126
(13) Button – Air distribution to footwell
(14) Button – Air distribution to the upper body.
(15) Button – Air distribution to head
(16) Button ECON – To connect economic mode. When the button light is on, the air conditioning is disconnected to save fuel.
(17) Button – Manual air recirculation mode.

WARNING

For your safety, the windows should never be fogged up or covered with snow or ice. This is essential to ensure good visibility. Please familiarise yourself with the correct operation of the heating and ventilation system, including the demist/defrost functions for the windows.

Note

Please observe the general notes. ■

Automatic mode

In automatic mode air temperature, flow, and distribution are automatically regulated so that a specified temperature is attained as quickly as possible and then maintained.

Switching on automatic mode

– Press the button AUTO. The display is visible ⇒ page 125, fig. 96 (7).

– Turn the temperature selector to set the desired temperature inside the vehicle. We recommend 22°C (72°F).

A comfortable interior climate is quickly reached when a temperature of +22°C (72°F) is set in automatic mode. It can be changed as necessary to suit individual preferences or particular circumstances. It is possible to select interior temperatures from +18°C (64°F) to +29°C (86°F). If a lower or higher temperature is selected, **LO** or **HI** is displayed on the screen. These are approximate temperatures and the actual temperature may be slightly higher or lower depending on the outside conditions. ▶

Climatronic maintains a constant temperature level fully automatically. The temperature of the air supplied to the interior, the blower speed and the air distribution are regulated automatically. The system also allows for the effect of strong sunlight, so there is no need for manual adjustment. Therefore, **automatic mode** provides the best comfort for the vehicle occupants in virtually all conditions throughout the year.

Automatic mode is switched off whenever an adjustment is made using the buttons for the air distribution, blower or ECON. The temperature continues to be regulated. ■

Manual mode

In manual mode you can adjust the air temperature, flow, and distribution yourself.

Switching on manual mode

– Press one of the buttons ⇒ page 125, fig. 96 13 to 15, or turn the blower control 1. The display is switched off 7.

Temperature

It is possible to select interior temperatures from +18°C (64°F) to +29°C (86°F). These are approximate temperatures and the actual temperature may be slightly higher or lower depending on the outside conditions.

If a temperature below 18°C (64°F) is selected, the display switches to **LO**. In this setting the system runs at maximum cooling output and the temperature is not regulated.

If a temperature above 29°C (86°F) is selected the display indicates **HI**. In this setting the system runs at maximum heating output and the temperature is not controlled.

Blower

The blower can be infinitely adjusted with the blower control 1. Always have the blower running at a low setting to ensure a constant flow of fresh air into the vehicle. If the blower is switched off (no level displayed 2) and the control is turned further to the left, the Climatronic is switched off. Then **OFF** is displayed on the screen.

Air distribution

The air distribution is adjusted using the buttons , , and . It is also possible to open and close some of the air outlets separately.

Switching the air conditioning system on and off

Pressing the button ECON switches off the air cooling system to save fuel. The temperature continues to be regulated. The set temperature can then only be reached if it is higher than the outside temperature. ■

Air recirculation mode

Air recirculation mode prevents fumes or unpleasant smells from entering the vehicle.

– Press the button to switch air recirculation mode on or off. This is ON if the symbol ⇒ page 125, fig. 96 5 is displayed on the screen.

Air recirculation mode prevents strong odours in the ambient air from entering the vehicle interior, for example when passing through a tunnel or in queuing traffic.

When the outside temperature is low, using air recirculation mode provides more effective heating by heating air from the vehicle interior instead of cold air from outside. ▶

When the outside temperature is high, using air recirculation mode provides more effective cooling by cooling air from the vehicle interior instead of warm air from outside.

For reasons of safety, air recirculation is **not** possible when the control for air distribution is set to the windscreen setting.

WARNING

In air recirculation mode, no ambient air enters the vehicle interior. If the air conditioning system is switched off, the windows can quickly mist over. Therefore, you should never leave the air recirculation mode switched on for longer periods, as this increases the risk of an accident.

Note

When reverse gear is engaged the air recirculation connects automatically to prevent the entrance of exhaust fumes in the vehicle on travelling backwards. In this case the symbol for air recirculation is not displayed. ■

General notes

The pollen filter

The pollution filter (a combined particulate filter and active carbon filter) serves as a barrier against impurities in the outside air, including dust and pollen.

For the air conditioning system to work with maximum efficiency, the pollen filter must be replaced at the intervals specified in the Inspections and Maintenance Schedule.

If the filter loses efficiency prematurely due to use in areas with very high levels of air pollution, the pollen filter must be changed more frequently than stated in the Service Schedule.

Caution

- If you suspect that the air conditioner is damaged, switch off the air conditioner with button ECON to prevent further damage and have it checked by a qualified workshop.
- Repairs to the air conditioning system require specialist knowledge and special tools. Therefore, we recommend that you take the vehicle to a qualified workshop should problems occur.

Note

- If the humidity and temperature outside the vehicle are high, **condensation** can drip off the evaporator in the cooling system and form a pool underneath the vehicle, this is completely normal and there is no need to suspect a leak.
- Keep the air intake slots in front of the windscreen free of snow, ice and leaves to ensure heating and cooling is not impaired, and to prevent the windows misting over.
- The air from the vents flows through the passenger compartment and is extracted by slots designed for this purpose. Do not cover these slots with articles of clothing or other objects.
- The air conditioning system operates most effectively with the windows and the sliding/tilting roof* closed. However, if the sun has heated up the vehicle, the air inside can be cooled more quickly by opening the windows for a short period.
- Do not smoke while air recirculation mode is on, as smoke drawn into the air conditioning system leaves a residue on the evaporator, producing a permanent unpleasant odour.
- At low outside temperatures the compressor switches off automatically. The AUTO button cannot be switched on either.
- The air conditioning should be turned on at least once a month, to lubricate the system gaskets and prevent leaks. If a decrease in the cooling capacity is detected, an Authorised Service Centre should be consulted to check the system. ▶

- For correct operation of the system, do not block the grille between the AUTO button and the button .
- When the engine is under extreme strain, switch off the compressor for a moment. ■

Driving

Steering

Adjusting the steering wheel position

The height and reach of the steering wheel can be freely adjusted to suit the driver.

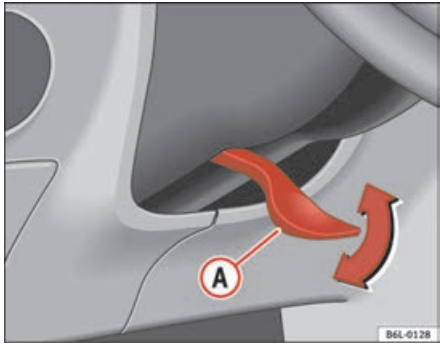

Fig. 97 Adjusting the steering wheel position

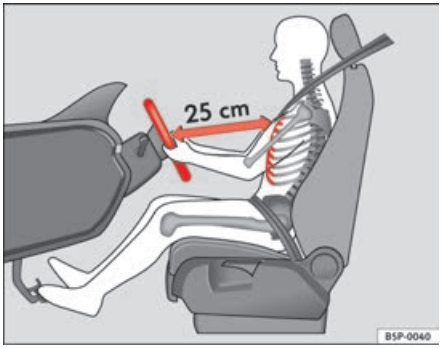

Fig. 98 Proper sitting position for driver

– Adjust the driver seat to the correct position.

– Push down the lever (A) ⇒ fig. 97 located under the steering column ⇒ ⚠.

– Adjust the steering wheel in this way until the correct position is set ⇒ fig. 98.

– Then push the lever up again firmly ⇒ ⚠.

⚠ WARNING

- **Incorrect use of the steering column adjustment function and an incorrect seating position can result in serious injury.**
- **To avoid accidents, the steering column should be adjusted only when the vehicle is stationary. Risk of accident.**

⚠ **WARNING (continued)**

- **Adjust the driver seat or steering wheel so that there is a distance of at least 25 cm between the steering wheel and your chest ⇒ page 130, fig. 98. If you fail to observe the minimum distance, the airbag will not protect you. Risk of fatal injury.**
- **If your physical constitution prevents you from maintaining the minimum distance of 25 cm, contact an Authorised Service Centre. The Authorised Service Centre will help you decide if special specific modifications are necessary.**
- **If you adjust the steering wheel so that it points towards your face, the driver airbag will not protect you properly in the event of an accident. Make sure that the steering wheel points towards your chest.**
- **When driving, always hold the steering wheel with both hands on the outside of the ring at the 9 o'clock and 3 o'clock positions. Never hold the steering wheel at the 12 o'clock position, or in any other manner (e.g. in the centre of the steering wheel, or on the inside of the rim). In such cases, you could receive severe injuries to the arms, hands and head.** ■

Safety

Electronic stabilisation programme (ESP)*

ESP helps make driving safer in certain situations.

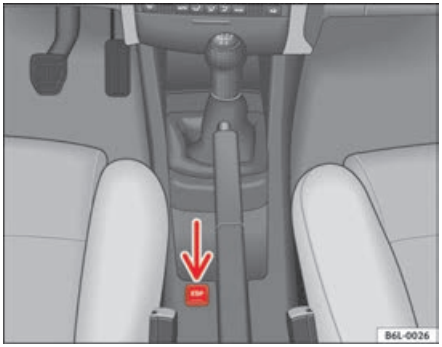

Fig. 99 Detail of the centre console: ESP button

The Electronic Stabilisation Program (ESP) contains the electronic differential lock (EDL) and the traction control system (TCS). The ESP function works in conjunction with the ABS. Both warning lamps will light up if the ESP or ABS systems are faulty.

The ESP is started automatically when the engine is started.

In specific circumstances where you require less traction, you can switch off the ESP by pressing button ⇒ fig. 99 ESP.

For example:

- When driving with snow chains,
- when driving in deep snow or on loose surfaces,

- when rocking the vehicle backwards and forwards to free it from mud, for example.

You should press the button to switch the ESP back on when you no longer need wheel spin.

The TCS and EDL are also switched off if the ESP is switched off. That is to say, these systems are not available while ESP is not activated.

When does the button light up or flash? (ESP)

- It lights up when the ignition is switched on and should go out again after about 2 seconds.
- It will start flashing to indicate that ESP is counteracting an unstable driving condition.
- It will light up continuously if there is a malfunction in the ESP.
- It will light up continuously if the ESP is switched off.

WARNING

- **The electronic stabilisation program (ESP) cannot defy the laws of physics. This should be kept in mind, particularly on slippery and wet roads and when towing a trailer.**
- **Always adapt your driving style to suit the condition of the roads and the traffic situation. Do not let the extra safety afforded by ESP tempt you into taking any risks when driving, this can cause accidents.**
- **Please refer to the corresponding warning notes on ESP in ⇒ page 147, "Intelligent technology".** ■

Ignition lock

Position of the ignition key

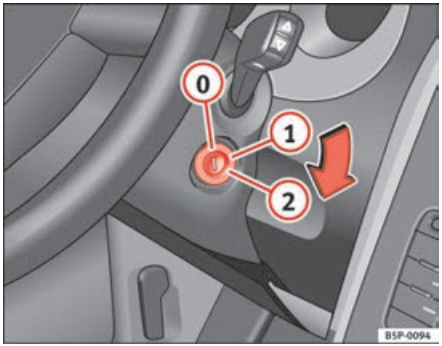

Fig. 100 Ignition key positions

Ignition switched off, steering lock (0)

In the position ⇒ fig. 100 the ignition and the engine are OFF and the steering may be locked.

For the **Steering lock** to operate without the ignition key, turn the steering wheel until it locks with an audible sound. You should always lock the steering wheel when you leave your vehicle. This will help prevent theft of the vehicle ⇒ ⚠.

Switching on the ignition or glow plug system (1)

Turn the ignition key to this position and let go of the key. If the key cannot be turned or is difficult to turn from position (0) to position (12), move the steering wheel (to take the load off the steering lock mechanism) until the key turns freely. ▶

Starting (2)

The engine is started when the key is in this position. Electrical components with a high power consumption are switched off temporarily.

Each time that the vehicle must be started, the ignition key must be turned to the position (0). The **repetitive start prevention lock** of the ignition prevents possible damage to the starter motor if the engine is already running.

WARNING

- **Wait for the vehicle to come to a standstill before removing the ignition key from the lock. The steering lock could be activated immediately - Risk of accident!**
- **Always remove the key from the ignition lock when leaving the vehicle, even if you only intend to be gone for a short period. This is especially important if you must leave children or disabled people in the vehicle, they could accidentally start the engine or work electrical equipment such as the windows possibly resulting in an accident.**
- **Unsupervised use of the keys could result in the engine being started or electrical systems, such as the electric windows, being used. This can result in serious injury.**

Caution

The starter motor will only work when the engine is stopped (ignition key position (2)). ■

Electronic immobiliser

The immobiliser prevents unauthorised persons from driving the vehicle.

Inside the key there is a chip that deactivates the electronic immobiliser automatically when the key is inserted into the ignition.

The immobiliser will be activated again automatically as soon as you pull the key out of the ignition lock.

The engine can only be started using a genuine SEAT key with the correct code.

Note

The vehicle cannot be operated properly if you do not have a genuine SEAT key. ■

Starting and stopping the engine

Starting petrol engines

The engine can only be started using a genuine SEAT key with the correct code.

– Move the gear lever to the neutral position and depress the clutch pedal fully and hold it in this position, the starter will then only have to turn the engine.

– Turn the ignition key to position ⇒ page 132 to start the engine. ▶

– Let go of the ignition key as soon as the engine starts; the starter motor must not be allowed to run on with the engine.

After starting a very hot engine, you may need to press the accelerator briefly.

When starting from cold, the engine may be a little noisy for the first few seconds until oil pressure has built up in the hydraulic valve compensators. This is quite normal, and no cause for concern.

If the engine does not start immediately, switch off the starter after about 10 seconds and try again after about half a minute. If the engine still does not start, the fuel pump fuse should be checked ⇒ page 211, “Fuses”.

WARNING

- **Never start or run the engine in unventilated or closed rooms. The exhaust fumes contain carbon monoxide, an odourless and colourless poisonous gas. Risk of fatal accidents. Carbon monoxide can cause loss of consciousness. It can also cause death.**
- **Never leave the vehicle unattended if the engine is running.**
- **Never use “cold start sprays”, they could explode or cause the engine to run at high revs. Risk of injury.**

Caution

- When the engine is cold, you should avoid high engine speeds, driving at full throttle and over-loading the engine. Risk of engine damage.
- The vehicle should not be pushed or towed for more than approximately 50 metres to start the engine. Fuel could enter the catalytic converter and damage it.
- Before attempting to push-start or tow a vehicle to start it, you should first try to start it using the battery of another vehicle. Note and follow the instructions ⇒ page 228, “Jump-starting”.

For the sake of the environment

Do not warm-up the engine by running the engine with the vehicle stationary. You should drive off as soon as you start the engine. This helps the engine reach operating temperature faster and reduces emissions. ■

Starting diesel engines

The engine can only be started using a genuine SEAT key with the correct code.

– Move the gear lever to the neutral position and depress the clutch pedal fully and hold it in this position, the starter will then only have to turn the engine.

– Turn the ignition key to the starting position.

– Turn the ignition key to position ⇒ page 132, fig. 100 (1). The indication lamp ⌀ will light for engine pre-heating.

– When the warning lamp goes out, turn the key to position (2) to start the engine. Do not press the accelerator.

– Let go of the ignition key as soon as the engine starts, the starter motor must not be allowed to run on with the engine.

When starting from cold, the engine may be a little noisy for the first few seconds until oil pressure has built up in the hydraulic valve compensators. This is quite normal, and no cause for concern.

If there are problems starting the engine, see ⇒ page 228. ▶

Glow plug system for the diesel engine

To avoid unnecessary load on the battery, do not use any other major electrical equipment while the glow plugs are pre-heating.

Start the engine as soon as the glow plug warning lamp ⇒ page 63 goes out.

Starting the engine after the fuel tank has been completely run dry

If the fuel tank has been completely run dry, it may take longer than normal (up to one minute) to start the engine after refuelling with diesel fuel. This is because the system must eliminate air first.

WARNING

- **Never start or run the engine in unventilated or closed rooms. The exhaust fumes contain carbon monoxide, an odourless and colourless poisonous gas. Risk of fatal accidents. Carbon monoxide can cause loss of consciousness. It can also cause death.**
- **Never leave the vehicle unattended if the engine is running.**
- **Never use "cold start sprays", they could explode or cause the engine to run at high revs. Risk of injury.**

Caution

- When the engine is cold, you should avoid high engine speeds, driving at full throttle and over-loading the engine. Risk of engine damage.
- The vehicle should not be pushed or towed for more than approximately 50 metres to start the engine. Fuel could enter the catalytic converter and damage it.
- Before attempting to push-start or tow a vehicle to start it, you should first try to start it using the battery of another vehicle. Note and follow the instructions ⇒ page 228, "Jump-starting".

For the sake of the environment

Do not warm-up the engine by running the engine with the vehicle stationary. You should drive off as soon as you start the engine. This helps the engine reach operating temperature faster and reduces emissions. ■

Switching off the engine

– Stopping the engine.

– Turn the ignition key to position ⇒ page 132, fig. 100 (0).

After the engine is switched off the radiator fan may run on for up to 10 minutes, even if the ignition is switched off. It is also possible that it will turn itself on once more if the temperature of the coolant increases due to the elimination of built up heat in the engine compartment or if this is heated due to prolonged exposure to the heat of the sun.

WARNING

- **Never switch off the engine until the vehicle is stationary.**
- **The brake servo works only when the engine is running. You will need more strength to brake the vehicle when the engine is switched off. As you cannot brake in the normal manner, there is a greater risk of accidents and serious injury.**
- **The steering lock can engage immediately when the key is removed from the ignition lock. The vehicle cannot be steered. Risk of accident.**

Caution

If the engine has been driven hard for a long period, the engine could overheat when it is switched off. Risk of engine damage. For this reason, you should idle the engine for approx. 2 minutes before you switch it off. ■

Manual gearbox

Driving a car with a manual gearbox

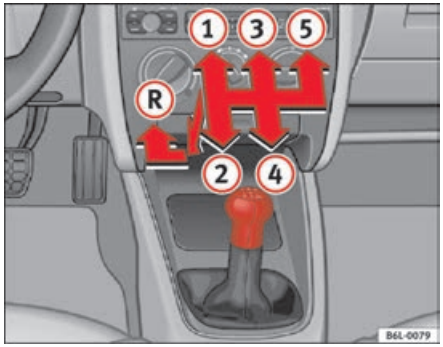

Fig. 101 Centre Console: gear shift pattern of a 5-speed manual gearbox

Selecting the reverse gear

– The vehicle should be stationary with the engine idling. Press the clutch right down.

– Place the gear lever into neutral gate and push the lever all the way down.

– Slide the gearlever to the left, and then into the reverse position shown on the gear lever.

Certain versions of the model may include a 6-speed manual gearbox, the diagram is shown on the gear stick.

The reverse gear can only be engaged when the vehicle is stationary. When the engine is running, before engaging this gear wait about 6 seconds with the clutch pressed in fully in order to protect the gearbox.

The reversing lights come on when the reverse gear is selected and the ignition is on.

WARNING

- **When the engine is running, the vehicle will start to move as soon as a gear is engaged and the clutch released.**
- **Never select the reverse gear when the vehicle is in motion. Risk of accident.**

Note

- Do not rest your hand on the gear lever when driving. The pressure of your hand could cause premature wear on the selector forks in the gearbox.
- When changing gear, you should always depress the clutch fully to avoid unnecessary wear and damage.
- Do not hold the car “on the clutch” on hills. This causes premature wear and damage to the clutch. ■

Automatic gearbox*

Gearbox programs

The automatic gearbox has two gearbox programmes.

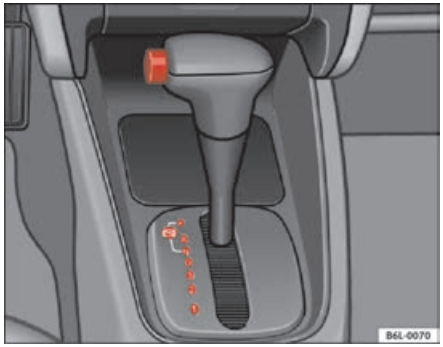

Fig. 102 Centre console: Automatic gearbox selector lever

The gearbox management system is equipped with two driving programmes. Depending on the driver or the driving situation, either a consumption oriented programme or a more “sporty” programme will be selected.

The programme selection will be carried out automatically depending on how the accelerator is used.

- The consumption-oriented programme will be selected if you use the accelerator slowly or normally. This means that the gearbox will shift up earlier and down later.
- A more “sporty” driving programme which shifts up gear later will be selected if you use the accelerator more quickly.

Note

A programme will, depending on the driving resistance, be selected automatically that guarantees more pulling power, thus avoiding having to shift gear constantly. ■

Selector lever lock functions

The selector lever lock in position P or N prevents gears from being engaged inadvertently, which would cause the vehicle to move.

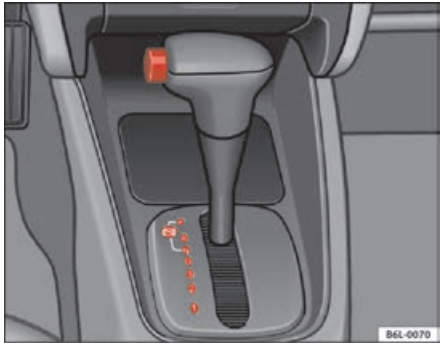

Fig. 103 Centre console: Automatic gearbox selector lever

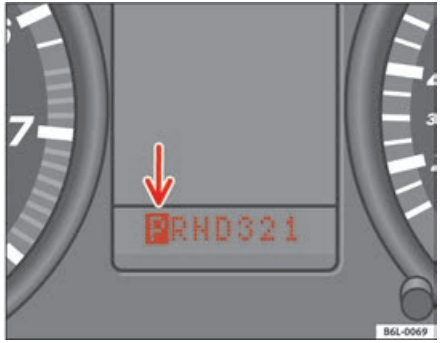

Fig. 104 Instrument panel display: Move the selector lever to position P.

The selector lever lock is released as follows:

– Switch on the ignition.

– Press and hold the brake pedal and press the selector lever lock on the left of the selector lever at the same time.

A delay device prevents the lever form blocking, on gently passing through position **N** (for example, from **R** to **D**),. This makes it possible, if the car is stuck, to remove it “by swinging it”. Only when the lever is in position **N** for more than 1 second, without pressing the brake, does the lever block come into operation.

At speeds of over 5 km/h the selector lever lock is automatically deactivated in position **N**. ■

Selector lever positions

P - Parking lock

This is the correct position for parking the vehicle. To engage and disengage **P** press the button on the gear stick knob and depress the brake pedal, while the car is running.

If the car is not running, it can be unlocked by pressing the knob button.

R - Reverse gear

This should only be engaged when the vehicle is at a standstill and the engine idling. Before engaging position **R**, starting from position **P** or **N**, depress the brake pedal and press the button on the gear stick knob.

In position **R** and with the ignition on, the reversing lights come on. ▶

N - Neutral (idling)

To take the lever out of position **N** at speeds of below 5 km/h or when the car is at a standstill but the ignition is switched on, depress the brake pedal and press the lock button on the gear stick knob.

D - Drive (forwards)

The four gears automatically change up or down, depending on engine load and vehicle speed.

In certain conditions it is preferable to place the selector lever provisionally in one of the positions described below:

3 - Position for uneven surfaces

Gears **1st**, **2nd** and **3th** automatically change up or down depending on the engine load and vehicle speed. **4th** gear is blocked. This increases the engine braking effect when decelerating.

This position is recommended when in position **D** and under certain driving conditions, there are frequent changes between **3th** and **4th**.

2 - Position for hilly roads

Position recommended for long slopes.

1st and **2nd** gear change automatically depending on engine load and vehicle speed. **3th** and **4th** do not operate.

1 - Position for very steep slopes or manoeuvres

Recommended position for extreme slopes.

The vehicle only travels in **1st** gear. **2nd**, **3th** and **4th** are blocked.

The cruise control* can not be used in position **1**.

Caution

Never move the selector lever to **R** or **P** when driving. This could damage the gearbox. Risk of accident!

Note

The selector lever can be placed in positions **3**, **2** and **1** when the change is made manually, but the automatic gearbox does not change to a lower gear until the number of revolutions is appropriate. ■

Kick-down feature

This system allows maximum acceleration. When the accelerator is depressed to full throttle, and depending on the vehicle speed and engine speed, the lowest gear is engaged. As soon as the maximum engine speed for that gear is reached, the next gear up is engaged.

WARNING

Remember that the drive wheels may skid if the kick-down feature is activated when driving on icy or slippery roads. Danger of skidding! ■

Instructions for driving

Starting

The engine can only be started when the selector lever is at **N** or **P** ⇒ page 133.

Selecting a range

When the car is at a standstill and the engine is running, always depress the brake pedal before selecting a range.

Do not accelerate on selecting a range when the engine is at a standstill ▶

If, while driving, the selector lever accidentally moves to position **N**, first release the accelerator pedal and wait until the engine slows to idling before selecting a forward gear ⇒ ⚠.

Starting

Select a range (**R, D, 3, 2, 1**). Wait until the change has taken place and the power transmission of the drive wheels has stabilised (slight pressure is noticeable). Then depress the accelerator.

Stopping

In the case of a temporary stop, for example at a traffic lights, it is not necessary to move to position **N**, it is sufficient to brake using the brake pedal. The engine should only run at idle speed.

Parking

On slopes, first pull handbrake on firmly and then connect block. This prevents overloading of the locking mechanism, making the subsequent deactivation easier. ⇒ ⚠

Emergency start

For vehicles fitted with an automatic gearbox the engine can not be started by towing or pushing the vehicle ⇒ page 231.

If the vehicle battery is flat, a battery from another car can be used to jump-start the car using a set of jump leads ⇒ page 133.

Towing

If the vehicle requires towing at any time, observe the instructions of ⇒ page 231, “Towing and tow-starting”.

Back-up programme

In the event of a malfunction of the gearbox electronics, emergency programmes are activated, according to the type of fault.

- The gearbox continues to connect gears automatically, but the operations are jerky. Consult the Authorised Service Centre.
- The gearbox does not automatically engage gears.

In this case they can be changed manually. **3th** gear is only available in positions **D, 3** and **2** of the selector lever.

In positions **1** and **R** of the selector lever **1st** gear and reverse gear are available respectively as normal.

As the torque converter is required to work more, especially due to the lack of **2nd** gear, it is possible that the gearbox oil may overheat. In this case, consult the Authorised Service Centre as soon as possible.

⚠ WARNING

- **In all the ranges the vehicle must always be held with the foot brake when the engine is running. This is because an automatic gearbox still transmits power even at idling speed, and the vehicle tends to “creep”.**
- **If, when the car is at a standstill and the engine is idling, a range is connected, take care not to accelerate accidentally (for example, when working in the engine compartment), as the car will start to move immediately.**
- **Before working on a running engine, place the selector lever in position P and apply the handbrake.**
- **To prevent the vehicle from moving out of control, the handbrake should always be applied when the vehicle is at a standstill. In addition move the selector lever to position P.** ■

Handbrake

Using the handbrake

The handbrake should be applied firmly to prevent the vehicle from accidentally rolling away.

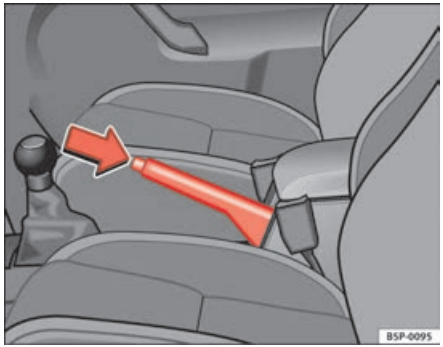

Fig. 105 Handbrake between the front seats

Always apply the handbrake when you leave your vehicle and when you park.

Applying the handbrake

– Pull the handbrake lever up firmly ⇒ fig. 105.

Releasing the handbrake

– Pull the lever up slightly and press the release knob in the direction of the arrow ⇒ fig. 105 and guide the handbrake lever down fully ⇒ ⚠.

Always apply the handbrake *firmly*. This prevents you driving with the handbrake applied ⇒ ⚠.

The handbrake warning lamp (!) lights up when the handbrake is applied and the ignition switched on. The warning lamp goes out when the handbrake is released.

⚠ WARNING

- **Never use the handbrake to slow down the vehicle when it is in motion. The braking distance is considerably longer, as braking is only applied to the rear wheels. Risk of accident!**
- **If it is only partially released this will cause overheating of the rear brakes, which can impair the function of the brake system and could lead to an accident. This also causes premature wear on the rear brake pads/linings.**

(!) Caution

Always apply the handbrake before you leave the vehicle. The first gear should also be selected. ■

Parking

The handbrake should always be firmly applied when the vehicle is parked.

Always note the following points when parking the vehicle:

– Use the foot brake to stop the vehicle.

– Apply the handbrake.

– The first gear should also be selected. ▶

– Switch off the engine and remove the key from the ignition lock. Turn the steering wheel slightly to engage the steering lock.

– Always take you car keys with you when you leave the vehicle ⇒ ⚠.

Additional notes on parking the vehicle on gradients:

Turn the steering wheel so that the vehicle would roll against the kerb if it did start to roll.

- If the vehicle is facing **downhill**, turn the front wheels so that they point *towards the kerb*.
- If the vehicle is facing **uphill**, turn the front wheels so that they point *away from the kerb*.
- Secure the vehicle as normal by applying the handbrake firmly and selecting first gear.

WARNING

- **Take measures to reduce the risk of injury when you leave your vehicle unattended.**
- **Never park where the hot exhaust system could ignite inflammable materials, such as dry grass, low bushes, spilt fuel etc.**
- **Never allow vehicle occupants to remain in the vehicle when it is locked. They would be unable to open the vehicle from the inside, and could become trapped in the vehicle in an emergency. In the event of an emergency, locked doors will delay assistance to occupants.**
- **Never leave children unsupervised in the vehicle. They could set the vehicle in motion, for example, by releasing the handbrake or the gear lever / selector lever.**
- **Depending on weather conditions, it may become extremely hot or cold inside the vehicle. This can be fatal.** ■

Cruise control system (CCS)*

Description

The cruise control system is able to maintain the set speed in the range from approx. 30 km/h to 180 km/h.

Once the speed setting has been saved, you may take your foot off the accelerator.

WARNING

It could be dangerous to use the cruise control system if it is not possible to drive at constant speed.

- **For safety reasons the cruise control system should not be used in dense traffic, in sections with bends or where roads conditions are poor (e.g. aquaplaning, loose chippings, slippery surfaces, snow). Risk of accident.**
- **Always switch off the CCS when you have finished using it. This will prevent you using it by mistake.**
- **It is dangerous to use a set speed which is too high for the current road, traffic or weather conditions. Risk of accident.**

Note

The cruise control cannot maintain a constant speed when descending gradients. The vehicle will accelerate under its own weight. Use the foot brake to slow the vehicle. ■

Switching the cruise control system on and off

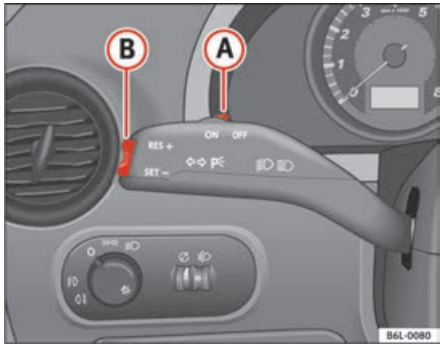

Fig. 106 Turn signal and main beam headlight lever switch and rocker switch for the cruise control

Switching on the system

– Move the control ⇒ fig. 106 (A) to the left to **ON**.

Switching off system

– Move the control (A) to the right to **OFF** or turn the ignition off when the vehicle is stationary. ■

Setting speed*

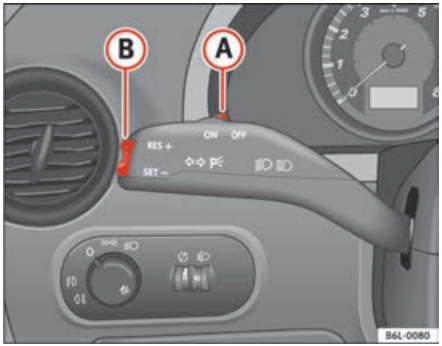

Fig. 107 Turn signal and main beam headlight lever switch and rocker switch for the cruise control

– Press the lower part **SET** of the rocker switch ⇒ fig. 107 (B) once briefly when you have reached the speed you wish to set.

When you release the rocker switch, the current speed is set and held constant. ■

Adjusting set speed*

The speed can be altered without touching the accelerator or the brake.

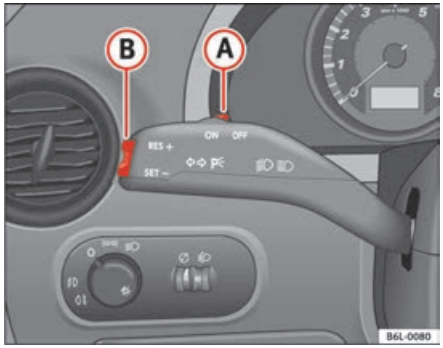

Fig. 108 Turn signal and main beam headlight lever switch and rocker switch for the cruise control

Setting a higher speed

– Press the upper part **RES** of the rocker switch ⇒ fig. 108 (B) to increase the speed. The vehicle will continue to accelerate for as long as you keep the rocker switch pressed. When you release the switch, the new speed is stored.

Setting a lower speed

– Press the lower part **SET–** of the rocker switch (A) to reduce the speed. The vehicle will automatically reduce its speed for as long as you keep the switch pressed. When you release the switch, the new speed is stored.

When you increase speed with the accelerator and then release the pedal, the system will automatically restore the set speed. This will not be the case, however, if the vehicle speed is more than 10 km/h higher than the stored speed for longer than 5 minutes. The speed will have to be stored again.

Control of the set speed is switched off if you reduce speed by depressing the brake pedal. Reactivate the control by pressing once on the upper part of the rocker switch **RES+** ⇒ fig. 108 (B).

WARNING

It is dangerous to use a set speed which is too high for the current road, traffic or weather conditions. Risk of accident. ■

Switching off system temporarily*

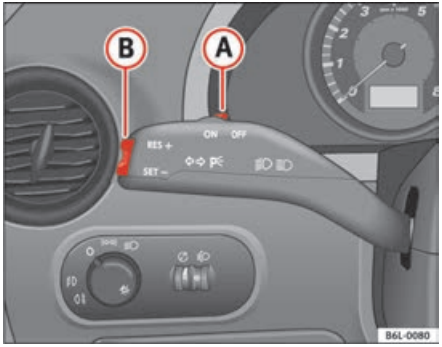

Fig. 109 Turn signal and main beam headlight lever switch and rocker switch for the cruise control

The cruise control system will be switched off in the following situations:

- if the brake pedal is depressed,

- if the clutch pedal is depressed,
- if the vehicle is accelerated to over 180 km/h,
- when the lever (A) is moved in the direction of **OFF** without fully being engaged.

To resume cruise control, release the brake or clutch pedal or reduce the vehicle speed to less than 180 km/h and press once on the upper part of the rocker switch **RES** ⇒ page 144, fig. 109 (B).

WARNING

It is dangerous to use a set speed which is too high for the current road, traffic or weather conditions. Risk of accident. ■

Completely switching off the system

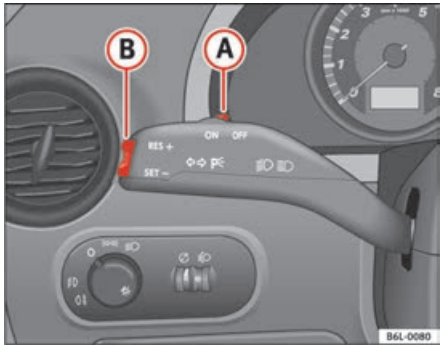

Fig. 110 Turn signal and main beam headlight lever switch and rocker switch for the cruise control

Vehicles with a manual gearbox

The system **is completely turned off** by moving the control (A) all the way to the right hand side (OFF engaged), or when the vehicle is stationary, ignition off.

Vehicles with an automatic gearbox

To completely disengage the system, the selector lever must be placed in one of the following positions: **P**, **N**, **R** or **1** or with the vehicle stopped and the ignition turned off. ■

Tips and Maintenance

Intelligent technology

Brakes

Brake servo

The brake servo amplifies the pressure you apply to the brake pedal. It works **only when the engine is running**.

If the brake servo is not functioning due to a malfunction, or if the vehicle has to be towed, you will have to press the brake pedal considerably harder to make up for the lack of servo assistance.

WARNING

The braking distance can also be affected by external factors.

- **Never let the vehicle coast with the engine switched off. Failure to do so could result in an accident. The braking distance is increased considerably as the brake servo does not function.**
- **If the brake servo is not functioning, for example if the vehicle is being towed, you will have to press the brake pedal considerably harder than normal.** ■

Brake assist system (BAS)*

The Brake Assist System function is only included in vehicles with ESP.

In an emergency, most drivers brake in time, but not with maximum force. This results in unnecessarily long braking distances.

The brake assist system intervenes here, if you press the brake pedal very quickly, the brake assist system registers an emergency situation. It then very quickly builds up the full brake pressure so that the ABS can be activated more quickly and efficiently, thus reducing the braking distance.

Do not reduce the pressure on the brake pedal. The brake assist system switches off automatically as soon as you release the brake.

WARNING

- **The risk of accident is higher if you drive too fast, if you do not keep your distance to the vehicle in front, and when the road surface is slippery or wet. The increased accident risk cannot be reduced by the brake assist system.**
- **The brake assist system cannot defy the laws of physics. Slippery and wet roads are dangerous even with the brake assist system! Therefore, it is essential that you adjust your speed to suit the road and traffic conditions. Do not let the extra safety features tempt you into taking any risks when driving.** ■

Anti-lock brake system and traction control ABS

Anti-lock brake system (ABS)

The anti-lock brake system prevents the wheels locking during braking.

The anti-lock brake system (ABS) is an important part of the vehicle's active safety system.

How the ABS works

If one of the wheels is turns too slowly in relation to the road speed, and is close to locking, the system will reduce the braking pressure for this wheel. The driver is made aware of this control process by a **pulsating of the brake pedal** and audible noise. This is a deliberate warning to the driver that one or more of the wheels is tending to lock and the ABS control function has intervened. In this situation it is important to keep the brake pedal fully depressed so the ABS can regulate the brake application. Do not “pump”.

If you brake hard on a slippery road surface, the best possible control is retained as the wheels do not lock.

However, ABS will not necessarily guarantee shorter braking distances in *all* conditions. The braking distance could even be longer if you brake on gravel or on fresh snow covering a slippery surface.

WARNING

- **The anti-lock brake system cannot defy the laws of physics. Slippery and wet roads are dangerous even with ABS! If you notice that the ABS is working (to counteract locked wheels under braking), you should reduce speed immediately to suit the road and traffic conditions. Do not let the extra safety features tempt you into taking any risks when driving.**

WARNING (continued)

- **The effectiveness of ABS is also determined by the tyres fitted** **⇒ page 195.**
- **If the running gear or brakes are modified, the effectiveness of the ABS could be severely limited.** ■

Traction control system (TCS)*

The traction control system prevents the drive wheels from spinning when the car is accelerating. The system always includes ABS

Description and operation of the traction control system during acceleration (TCS)

TCS reduces engine power to help prevent the drive wheels of front-wheel drive vehicles losing traction during acceleration. The system works in the entire speed range in conjunction with ABS. If a malfunction should occur in the ABS, the TCS will also be out of action.

TCS helps the vehicle to start moving, accelerate and climb a gradient in slippery conditions where this may otherwise be difficult or even impossible.

The TCS is switched on automatically when the engine is started. If necessary, it may be turned on or off pushing the button on the centre console.

When the TCS is off, the warning lamp is lit. The TCS should normally be left switched on at all times. Only in exceptional circumstances, when slipping of the wheels is required, should it be disconnected, for example

- With compact temporary spare wheel.
- When using the snow chains.
- When driving in deep snow or on loose surfaces
- When the vehicle is bogged-down, to free it by “rocking.”

The TCS should be switched on again afterwards as soon as possible.

WARNING

- **It must be remembered that TCS cannot defy the laws of physics. This should be kept in mind, particularly on slippery and wet roads and when towing a trailer.**
- **Always adapt your driving style to suit the condition of the roads and the traffic situation. Do not let the extra safety afforded by TCS tempt you into taking any risks when driving, this can cause accidents.**

Caution

- In order to ensure that TCS function correctly, all four wheels must be fitted with the same tyres. Any differences in the rolling radius of the tyres can cause the system to reduce engine power when this is not desired.
- Modifications to the vehicle (e.g. to the engine, the brake system, running gear or any components affecting the wheels and tyres) could affect the efficiency of the ABS and TCS. ■

Electronic stabilisation program (ESP)*

General notes

The electronic stabilisation program increases the vehicle's stability on the road.

The electronic stabilisation program helps to reduce the danger of skidding.

The electronic stabilisation programme (ESP) consists of **ABS, EDL and TCS.**

Electronic Stabilising Program (ESP)*

ESP reduces the danger of skidding by braking the wheels individually.

The system uses the steering wheel angle and road speed to calculate the changes of direction desired by the driver, and constantly compares them with the actual behaviour of the vehicle. If the desired course is not being maintained (for instance, if the car is starting to skid), then the ESP compensates automatically by braking the appropriate wheel.

The forces acting on the braked wheel bring the vehicle back to a stable condition. If the vehicle tends to oversteer, the system will act on the front wheel on the outside of the turn.

WARNING

- **It must be remembered that ESP cannot defy the laws of physics. This should be kept in mind, particularly on slippery and wet roads and when towing a trailer.**
- **Always adapt your driving style to suit the condition of the roads and the traffic situation. Do not let the extra safety afforded by ESP tempt you into taking any risks when driving, this can cause accidents.**

Caution

- In order to ensure that ESP functions correctly, all four wheels must be fitted with the same tyres. Any differences in the rolling radius of the tyres can cause the system to reduce engine power when this is not desired.
- Modifications to the vehicle (e.g. to the engine, the brake system, running gear or any components affecting the wheels and tyres) could affect the efficiency of the ABS, EDL, ESP and TCS.

Note

To disconnect using the ESP button ⇒ page 131. ■

Anti-lock brake system (ABS)

The anti-lock brake system prevents the wheels locking during braking ⇒ page 148. ■

Electronic differential lock (EDL)*

The electronic differential lock helps prevent the loss of traction caused if one of the driven wheels starts spinning.

EDL helps the vehicle to start moving, accelerate and climb a gradient in slippery conditions where this may otherwise be difficult or even impossible.

The system will control the revolutions of the drive wheels using the ABS sensors (in case of an EDL fault the warning lamp for ABS lights up) ⇒ page 64.

At speeds of up to approximately 80 km/h, it is able to balance out differences in the speed of the driven wheels of approximately 100 rpm caused by a slippery road surface on *one side* of the vehicle. It does this by braking the wheel which has lost traction and distributing more driving force to the other driven wheel via the differential.

To prevent the disc brake of the braked wheel from overheating, the EDL cuts out automatically if subjected to excessive loads. The vehicle will continue to function normally without EDL. For this reason, the driver is not informed that the EDL has been switched off.

The EDL will switch on again automatically when the brake has cooled down.

WARNING

- **When accelerating on a slippery surface, for example on ice and snow, press the accelerator carefully. Despite EDL, the driven wheels may start to spin. This could impair the vehicle's stability.**

WARNING (continued)

- **Always adapt your driving style to suit road conditions and the traffic situation. Do not let the extra safety afforded by EDL tempt you into taking any risks when driving, this can cause accidents.**

Caution

Modifications to the vehicle (e.g. to the engine, the brake system, running gear or any components affecting the wheels and tyres) could affect the efficiency of the EDL ⇒ page 171. ■

The traction control system (TCS)

The traction control system prevents the drive wheels from spinning when the car is accelerating ⇒ page 148. ■

Driving and the environment

Running-in

Running in a new engine

The engine needs to be run-in over the first 1,500 km.

Up to 1,000 kilometres

– Do not drive faster than three quarters of top speed.

– Do not accelerate hard.

– Avoid high engine revolutions.

– Do not tow a trailer.

From 1000 to 1500 km

– Speeds can be *gradually* increased to the maximum road speed or maximum permissible engine speed (rpm).

During its first few hours of running, the internal friction in the engine is greater than later on when all the moving parts have bedded in.

For the sake of the environment

If the engine is run in gently, the life of the engine will be increased and its oil consumption reduced. ■

Passage of water (Cupra Version)

The speed of the vehicle through puddles and passages of water must not exceed 25 km/h. ■

Running in tyres and brake pads

New tyres should be run-in carefully for the first 500 km. New brake pads should be run-in carefully for the first 200 km.

During the first 200 km, you can compensate for the reduced braking effect by applying more pressure to the brake pedal. If you need to make an emergency stop, the braking distance will be longer with new brake pads than with brake pads that have been run-in.

WARNING

- **New tyres do not give maximum grip to start with, and require running-in. This may cause an accident. Drive particularly carefully in the first 500 km.**
- **New brake pads must be “run in” and do not have the correct friction properties during the first 200 km. However, the reduced braking capacity may be compensated by pressing on the brake pedal a little harder.** ■

Braking effect and braking distance

The braking effect and braking distance are influenced by driving situations and road conditions.

The efficiency of the brakes depends directly on the **brake pad** wear. The rate of wear of the brake pads depends to a great extent on the conditions under which the vehicle is operated and the way the vehicle is driven. If you often drive in town traffic, drive short distances or have a sporty driving style, we recommend that you have the thickness of your brake pads checked by an Authorised Service Centre more frequently than recommended in the Service Schedule.

If you drive with **wet brakes**, for example, after crossing areas of water, in heavy rainfall or even after washing the car, the effect of the brakes is lessened as the brake discs are wet or even frozen (in winter): The brakes should be "dried" by repeatedly pressing the pedal to restore full braking effect.

WARNING

Longer braking distances and faults in the brake system increase the risk of accidents.

- **New brake pads must be run in and do not have the correct friction during the first 200 km. However, the reduced braking capacity may be compensated by pressing on the brake pedal a little harder. This also applies when new brake pads are fitted.**
- **If brakes are wet or frozen, or if you are driving on roads which have been gritted with salt, braking power may set in later than normal.**
- **On steep descents if the brakes are excessively used they will over heat. Before driving down a long steep gradient, it is advisable to reduce speed and change to a lower gear (or move the selector lever to a lower gear if your vehicle has automatic transmission). This makes use of engine braking and relieves the brakes.**

WARNING (continued)

- **Never let the brakes "rub" by applying light pressure. Continuous braking will cause the brakes to overheat and will increase the braking distance. Apply and then release the brakes alternately.**
- **Never let the vehicle coast with the engine switched off. The braking distance is increased considerably as the brake servo does not function.**
- **Very heavy use of the brakes may cause a vapour lock if the brake fluid is left in the system for too long. This impairs the braking effect.**
- **Non-standard or damaged front spoilers could restrict the airflow to the brakes and cause them to overheat. Observe the relevant instructions before purchasing accessories ⇒ page 171, "Modifications".**
- **If a brake circuit fails, the braking distance will be increased considerably. Contact a qualified workshop immediately and avoid unnecessary journeys.** ■

Exhaust gasses purification system

Catalytic converter*

To conserve the useful life of the catalytic converter

– Always use unleaded petrol.

– Do not run the fuel tank dry.

– For engine oil changes, do not replenish with too much engine oil ⇒ page 185, "Topping up engine oil".

– Never tow the vehicle to start it, use jump leads if necessary ⇒ page 228.

If you notice misfiring, uneven running or loss of power when the vehicle is moving, reduce speed immediately and have the vehicle inspected at the nearest qualified workshop. In general, the exhaust warning lamp will light up when any of the described symptoms occur ⇒ page 60. If this happens, unburnt fuel can enter the exhaust system and escape into the environment. The catalytic converter can also be damaged by overheating.

WARNING

The catalytic converter reaches very high temperatures! Fire hazard!

- **Never park where the catalytic converter could come into contact with dry grass or inflammable materials under the vehicle.**
- **Do not apply additional underseal or anti-corrosion coatings to the exhaust pipes, catalytic converter or the heat shields on the exhaust system. These materials could catch fire when the vehicle is driven.**

Caution

Never fully drain the fuel tank, in this case, the irregularity of the fuel supply may cause ignition problems. This allows unburnt fuel to enter the exhaust system, which could cause overheating and damage the catalytic converter.

For the sake of the environment

Even when the emission control system is working perfectly, there may be a smell of sulphur from the exhaust under some conditions. This depends on the sulphur content of the fuel used. Quite often the problem can be remedied by changing to another brand of fuel. ■

Diesel engine particulate filter*

The diesel engine particulate filter eliminates soot produced by burning diesel.

The particulate filter for diesel engines removes almost all the carbon particles from the exhaust system. When driving normally, the filter is self-cleaning. If the filter is unable to self-clean (e.g. when constantly making short journeys), there is a build-up of soot in the filter and the symbol for the diesel engine particulate filter lights up. See under Warning Lights.

WARNING

- **The diesel engine particulate filter may reach extremely high temperatures; it should not enter into contact with flammable materials underneath the vehicle. Failure to comply could result in fire.**

Caution

Vehicles equipped with a diesel engine particulate filter must not be refuelled using biodiesel (RME), given that the fuel system may be damaged. ■

Driving abroad

Notes

For driving abroad, the following must be taken into consideration:

- For vehicles fitted with a catalytic converter ensure that unleaded petrol is available for the journey. See the chapter “Refuelling”. Automobile organisations will have information about service station networks selling unleaded fuel.

- In some countries it is possible that a vehicle model is sold under conditions where some spare parts are not available or that the Authorised Service Centre may only carry out limited repairs.

SEAT importers and distributors will gladly provide information about the technical preparation of your vehicle in addition to necessary maintenance and repair possibilities. ■

Adhesive strips for headlights

If you have to drive a right-hand drive vehicle in a left-hand drive country, or vice versa, the asymmetric dipped beam headlights will dazzle oncoming traffic.

To prevent dazzling, you must apply stickers to certain parts of the headlight lenses. Further information is available from your Authorised Service Centre. ■

Adjusting simple headlights for driving on the left*

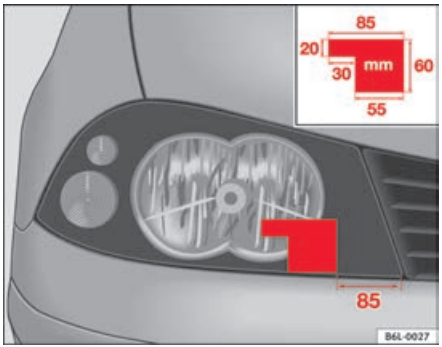

Fig. 111 Right headlight

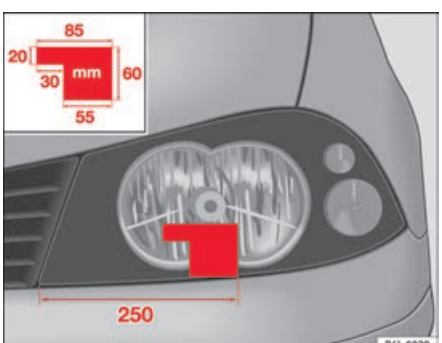

Fig. 112 Left headlight

On the right headlight, if you are changing from driving on the right-hand side to the left-hand side ⇒ fig. 111.

On the left headlight, if you are changing from driving on the right-hand side to the left-hand side ⇒ page 154, fig. 112. ■

Covering simple headlights for driving on the right*

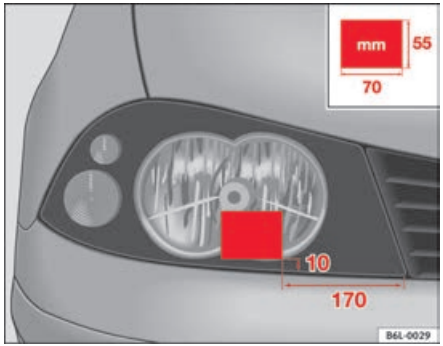

Fig. 113 Right headlight

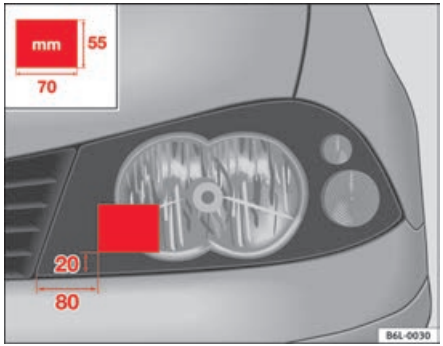

Fig. 114 Left headlight

On the right headlight, if you are changing from driving on the left-hand side to the right-hand side ⇒ fig. 113.

On the left headlight, if you are changing from driving on the left-hand side to the right-hand side ⇒ fig. 114. ■

Covering bifocal headlamps for driving on the left*

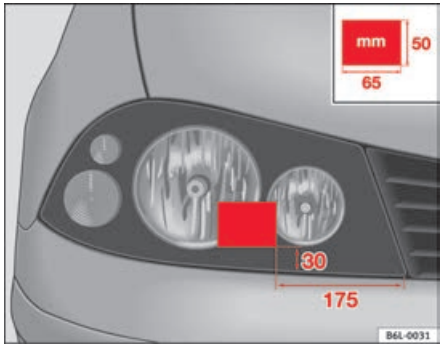

Fig. 115 Right headlight

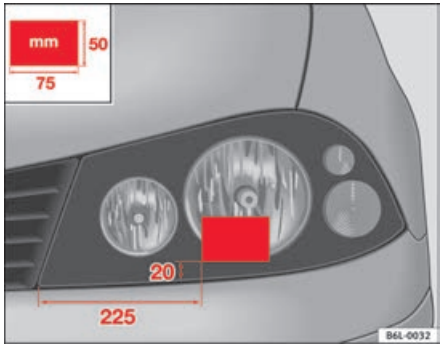

Fig. 116 Left headlight

On the right headlight, if you are changing from driving on the right-hand side to the left-hand side ⇒ fig. 115.

On the left headlight, if you are changing from driving on the right-hand side to the left-hand side ⇒ fig. 116. ■

Covering bifocal headlamps for driving on the right*

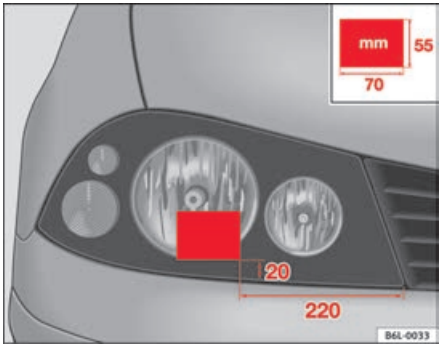

Fig. 117 Right headlight

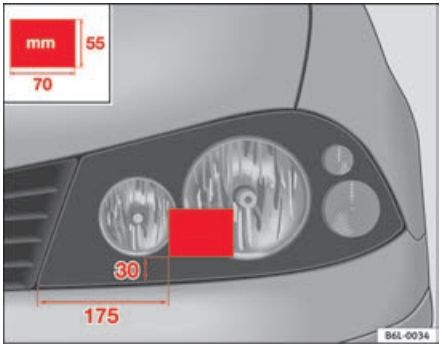

Fig. 118 Left headlight ▶

On the right hand side headlight, if you are changing from driving on the left-hand side to the right-hand side ⇒ page 156, fig. 117.

On the left headlight, if you are changing from driving on the left-hand side to the right-hand side ⇒ page 156, fig. 118. ■

Covering GDL headlamps for driving on the left*

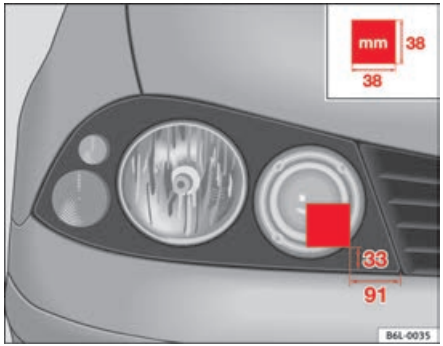

Fig. 119 Right headlight

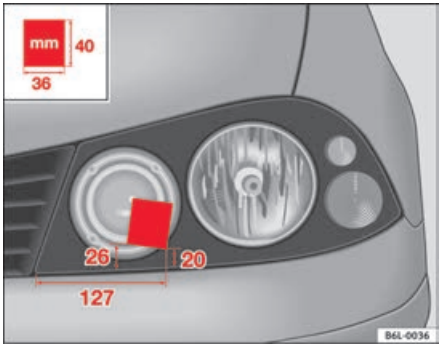

Fig. 120 Left headlight

On the right headlight, if you are changing from driving on the right-hand side to the left-hand side ⇒ fig. 119.

On the left headlight, if you are changing from driving on the right-hand side to the left-hand side ⇒ fig. 120. ■

Covering GDL headlamps for driving on the right*

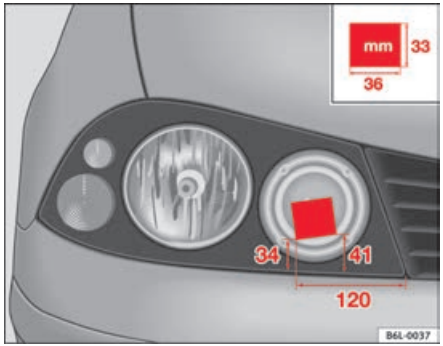

Fig. 121 Right headlight

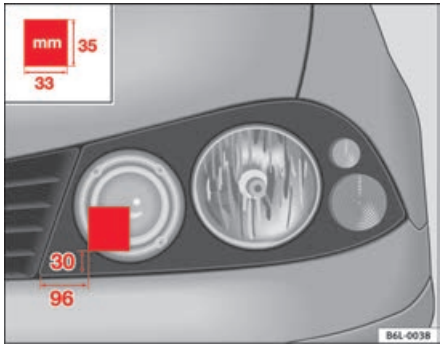

Fig. 122 Left headlight

On the right headlight, if you are changing from driving on the left-hand side to the right-hand side ⇒ fig. 121.

On the left headlight, if you are changing from driving on the left-hand side to the right-hand side ⇒ fig. 122. ■

Trailer towing

What do you need to bear in mind when towing a trailer?

Your vehicle may be used to tow a trailer when fitted with the correct equipment.

If the car is supplied with a **factory-fitted** towing bracket it will already have the necessary technical modifications and meet the statutory requirements for towing a trailer. If you wish to **retrofit** a towing bracket, consult ⇒ page 174.

Connectors

Your vehicle is fitted with a 12-pin connector for the electrical connection between the trailer and the vehicle.

If the trailer has a **7-pin plug** you will need to use an adapter cable. This is available from any SEAT dealer.

Trailer weight / draw bar loading

Never exceed the authorised towing limit. If you do not load the trailer up to the maximum permitted trailer weight, you can then climb correspondingly steeper gradients.

The maximum trailer weights listed are only applicable for **altitudes** up to 1,000 m above sea level. With increasing altitude the engine power and therefore the vehicle's climbing ability are impaired because of the reduced air density. The maximum trailer weight has to be reduced accordingly. The weight of the vehicle and trailer combination must be reduced by 10% for every further 1,000 m (or part thereof). The gross combination weight is the actual weight of the laden vehicle plus the actual weight of the laden trailer. ▶

Where possible, operate the trailer with the maximum permitted **draw bar weight** on the ball joint of the towing bracket, but do not exceed the specified limit.

The figures for **trailer weights** and **draw bar weights** that are given on the data plate of the towing bracket are for certification purposes only. The correct figures for your specific model, which may be *lower* than these figures for the towing bracket, are given in the registration documents ⇒ Section "Technical data".

Distributing the load

Distribute loads in the trailer so that heavy objects are as near to the axle as possible. Loads carried in the trailer must be secured to prevent them moving.

Tyre pressure

Set tyre pressure to the maximum permissible pressure shown on the sticker on the inside of the fuel tank flap. Set the tyre pressure of the trailer tyres in accordance with the trailer manufacturer's recommendations.

Exterior mirrors

Check whether you can see enough of the road behind the trailer with the standard mirrors. If this is not the case you should have additional mirrors fitted. Both exterior mirrors should be mounted on hinged extension brackets. Adjust the mirrors to give sufficient vision to the rear.

WARNING

Never transport people in a trailer. This could result in fatal accidents.

Note

- Towing a trailer places additional demands on the vehicle. We recommend additional services between the normal inspection intervals if the vehicle is used frequently for towing a trailer.
- Find out whether special regulations apply to towing a trailer in your country. ■

Ball coupling of towing bracket*

The ball coupling of the towing bracket is located in the tool box

The ball coupling is provided with instructions on fitting and removing the ball coupling of the towing bracket.

WARNING

The towing bracket ball coupling must be stored securely in the luggage compartment to prevent them being flung through the vehicle and causing injury.

Note

- By law, the ball coupling must be removed if a trailer is not being towed and it obscures the number plate. ■

Driving tips

Driving with a trailer always requires extra care.

Weight distribution

The weight distribution of a loaded trailer with an unladen vehicle is very unfavourable. However, if this cannot be avoided, drive extra slowly to allow for the unbalanced weight distribution. ▶

Speed

The stability of the vehicle and trailer is reduced with increasing speed. For this reason it is advisable not to drive at the maximum permissible speed in unfavourable road, weather or wind conditions. This applies especially when driving downhill.

You should always reduce speed immediately if the trailer shows the slightest sign of **snaking**. Never try to stop the "snaking" by increasing speed.

Always brake in good time. If the trailer has an **overrun brake**, apply the brakes *gently at first* and then firmly. This will prevent the jerking that can be caused by the trailer wheels locking. Select a low gear in good time before going down a steep descent. This enables you to use the engine braking to slow down the vehicle.

Heating

At very high temperatures and during prolonged ascents, driving in a low gear and high engine speed, always monitor the temperature indicator for the coolant ⇒ page 51.

Electronic Stabilisation Program*

Do not switch off the ESP* when towing a trailer. The ESP* makes it easier to stabilise if the trailer starts to snake. ■

Driving economically and with respect for the environment

General notes

Fuel consumption depends largely on your personal driving style.

Fuel economy, environmental impact and wear on the engine, brakes and tyres depend largely on three factors:

- Personal driving style
- Conditions of use (weather, road surface)
- Technical requirements

By adopting an economical driving style and anticipating the traffic situation ahead, you can easily reduce fuel consumption by 10-15%. This section suggests methods of lessening the impact on the environment and reducing your operating costs at the same time. ■

Think ahead when driving

A vehicle uses most fuel when accelerating. If you think ahead when driving, you will need to brake less and thus accelerate less. Wherever possible, let the vehicle roll slowly to a stop, for instance when you can see that the next traffic lights are red. ■

Regular servicing

By taking your car to an Authorised Service Centre for regular servicing you can establish a basis for good fuel economy *before* you start driving. A well-serviced engine gives you the benefit of **improved fuel efficiency** as well as maximum reliability and an enhanced resale value.

A badly serviced engine can consume up to 10% more fuel than necessary.

Check the **oil level** every time you fill the tank ⇒ page 184. Oil consumption depends to a great extent on the engine load and engine speed. Depending on your personal driving style, oil consumption can be up to 1 litre per 1,000 km. ■

Avoid short journeys

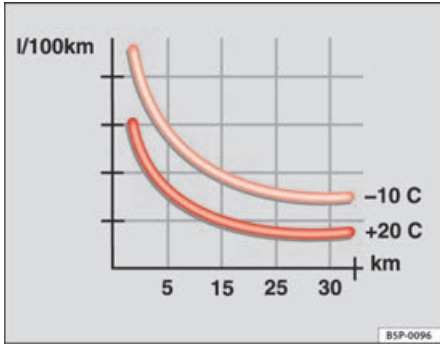

Fig. 123 Fuel consumption in litres per 100 km at two different ambient temperatures

The engine and catalytic converter need to reach their proper **working temperature** in order to minimise fuel consumption and emissions.

Directly after a cold start, the engine uses about 50-70 litres of fuel per 100 km. This figure then drops to 20-30 litres per 100 km after about one kilometre. The engine only reaches its working temperature after about *four* kilometres, when fuel consumption will return to a normal level. You should therefore avoid short journeys.

The **ambient temperature** has a decisive influence.

The illustration shows the different rates of fuel consumption for the same distance at both +20°C and -10°C. Your vehicle will use more fuel in winter than in summer. ■

Cleaning and caring for your vehicle

General notes

Regular washing and care help maintain the value of your vehicle.

Regular care

Regular and expert care helps to **maintain the value** of the vehicle. This may also be one of the requirements for acknowledging warranty claims in the event of corrosion or paint defects.

The best way to protect the car against environmental contaminants is to wash and wax it *frequently*. The longer substances such as insects, bird droppings, resinous tree sap, road dirt, industrial deposits, tar, soot or road salt and other aggressive materials remain on the vehicle, the more damage they do to the paintwork. High temperatures (for instance in strong sunlight) further intensify the corrosive effect.

After the period when salt is put on the roads it is important to have the **underside** of the vehicle washed thoroughly.

Car care products

Car care products are available from your Authorised Service Centre. Keep the product instructions until you have used up the product.

WARNING

- **Car care products can be toxic. For this, they must always be kept closed in their original container. Keep out of children's reach. Failure to comply could result in poisoning.**
- **Always read and observe the instructions and warnings on the package before using car care products. Improper use could damage your health or**

WARNING (continued)

your vehicle. The use of certain products may produce noxious vapours; these should be used in well ventilated areas.

- **Never use fuel, turpentine, engine oil, nail varnish remover or other volatile fluids. These are toxic and highly flammable. There is a fire / explosion risk.**
- **Before you wash your vehicle, or carry out any maintenance, switch off the engine, apply the handbrake firmly and remove the key from the ignition.**

Caution

Never attempt to remove dirt, mud or dust if the surface of the vehicle is dry. Never use a dry cloth or sponge for cleaning purposes. This could damage the paintwork or glass on your vehicle. Soak dirt, mud or dust with plenty of water.

For the sake of the environment

- When purchasing car care products, try to select ones which are not harmful to the environment.
- Left over car care products should not be disposed of with ordinary household waste. Observe the disposal information on the package. ■

Care of the vehicle exterior

Automatic car washes

The paint is so durable that the car can normally be washed without problems in an automatic car wash. However, the effect on the paint depends to a large extent on the design of the car wash, the brushes used, the filtering of the wash water and the type of detergents and wax solutions used, etc.

After the car has been washed, the **brakes** could respond later than normal as the brake discs and brake pads will be wet, or even frozen in winter. You must "dry" the brakes by applying the brakes carefully several times ⇒ page 152, "Braking effect and braking distance".

WARNING

Moisture, ice and salt on the brakes may affect braking efficiency. Risk of accident.

Caution

Before putting the vehicle in a carwash tunnel, do not tighten the aerial if it is folded as this may cause damage. ■

Washing by hand

Washing the vehicle

– First soften the dirt with plenty of water and rinse off.

– Clean the vehicle with a soft sponge, a glove or a brush. Start on the roof and work your way down. Use only light pressure.

– Rinse the sponge or glove as much as possible.

– Special car shampoo should only be used for very stubborn dirt.

– Clean the wheels, sill panels etc. last using a different sponge or glove.

– Rinse the vehicle thoroughly with water.

– Dry the surface of the vehicle gently using a chamois leather.

– If it is **cold**, dry the rubber seals and the surfaces they touch with a cloth to prevent them freezing. Apply silicone spray to the rubber seals.

After cleaning the vehicle

– If possible, avoid sudden braking directly after washing the vehicle. You must "dry" the brakes by applying the brakes carefully several times ⇒ page 152, "Braking effect and braking distance".

WARNING

- **The ignition must always be switched off before the vehicle is washed.**
- **Protect your hands and arms from cuts on sharp metal edges when cleaning the underbody, the inside of the wheel housings etc. Risk of injury.**
- **Moisture, ice and salt on the brakes may affect braking efficiency. Risk of accident.**

Caution

- Never attempt to remove dirt, mud or dust if the surface of the vehicle is dry. Never use a dry cloth or sponge for cleaning purposes. This could scratch the paintwork or glass on your vehicle.
- Washing the vehicle in low temperatures: if the vehicle is rinsed with a hose, do not direct the water into the lock cylinders or the gaps around the doors, luggage compartment, or bonnet. Otherwise there is a risk of malfunction.

For the sake of the environment

In the interests of environmental protection, the car should be washed only in specially provided wash bays. This prevents toxic, oil-laden waste water entering the sewerage system. In some districts, washing vehicles anywhere else may be prohibited.

Note

Do not wash the vehicle in direct sunlight. ■

Washing the car with a high pressure cleaner

Be particularly careful when using a high pressure cleaner!

– Always observe the instructions for the high-pressure cleaner, particularly those concerning the **pressure** and the **spraying distance**.

– Increase the spraying distance for soft materials and painted bumpers.

– Do not use a high pressure cleaner to remove ice or snow from windows ⇒ page 165.

– Never use concentrated jet nozzles or so-called “dirt blasters” ⇒ ⚠.

– If possible, avoid sudden braking directly after washing the vehicle. You must “dry” the brakes by applying the brakes carefully several times ⇒ page 152.

WARNING

- **Never wash tyres with a concentrated jet or cylindrical jet (“rotating nozzle”). Even at large spraying distances and short cleaning times, visible and invisible damage can occur to the tyres. This may cause an accident.**
- **Moisture, ice and salt on the brakes may affect braking efficiency. Risk of accident.**

Caution

- Do not use water hotter than 60°C. This could damage the car.
- To avoid damage to the vehicle, maintain a sufficient distance from sensitive materials for example: flexible hoses, plastic, sound proofing, etc. This is especially important for bumpers painted in the same colour as the vehicle. The closer the nozzle is to the surface, the greater the wear on the material. ■

Waxing the car

Regular waxing protects the paintwork.

You need to apply wax to your car if water does not form small drops and run off the paintwork when it is *clean*.

Good quality *hard wax* is available from your Authorised Service Centre.

A good coat of wax helps to protects the paintwork from environmental contaminants ⇒ page 162. It is also effective in protecting against minor scratches.

Even if a **wax solution** is used regularly in the car wash, it is advisable to protect the paint with a coat of hard wax at least twice a year. ■

Polishing the paintwork

Polishing brings back gloss to the paintwork.

Polishing is only necessary if the paint has lost its shine, and the gloss cannot be brought back by applying wax. Polish can be obtained from your Authorised Service Centre.

The car must be waxed after polishing if the polish used does not contain wax compounds to seal the paint ⇒ page 165, “Waxing the car”.

Caution

To prevent damage to the paintwork:

- Do not use polishes and hard wax on painted parts with a matt finish or on plastic parts.
- Do not polish your vehicle in a sandy or dusty environment. ■

Caring for plastic parts

Solvents will damage plastic parts.

If normal washing fails to clean plastic parts, clean them with special **solvent-free** plastic cleaning and care products.

Caution

- The use of liquid air conditioners directly over the air vents of the vehicle may damage the plastic parts if the liquid is accidentally spilled.
- Cleaning products which contain solvents will damage the material. ■

Cleaning windows and exterior mirrors

Cleaning the windows

– Moisten the windows with commercially available, alcohol based glass cleaner.

– Dry the windows with a clean chamois leather or a lint-free cloth.

Removing snow

– Use a small brush to remove snow from the windows and mirrors.

Removing ice

– Use a de-icer spray.

Use a clean cloth or chamois leather to dry the windows. Chamois leathers that have been used on painted surfaces are not suitable for use on windows. They will be soiled with wax deposits that would smear the windows. ▶

If possible use a de-icing spray to remove ice. If you use an ice scraper, push it in one direction only. Do not move it to and fro.

Use window cleaner or a silicone remover to clean off rubber, oil, grease and silicone deposits.

Wax deposits have to be removed with a special cleaner that is available from your Authorised Service Centre. Wax deposits on the windscreen could cause the wiper blades to judder. A window cleanser specifically for removing wax will stop the blades juddering if added to the windscreen washer fluid. Grease removing cleansers will not remove wax deposits.

Caution

- Never use warm or hot water to remove snow and ice from windows and mirrors. This could cause the glass to crack!
- The heating element for the rear window is located on the inner side of the window. To prevent damage, do not put stickers over the heating elements on the inside of the window. ■

Cleaning windscreen wiper blades

Clean wiper blades are essential for clear vision.

1. Use a soft cloth to remove dust and dirt from the windscreen wiper blades.
2. Use window cleanser to clean the windscreen wiper blades. Use a sponge or a cloth to remove stubborn stains. ■

Care of rubber seals

If rubber seals are well looked after, they will not freeze so quickly.

1. Use a soft cloth to remove dust and dirt from the rubber seals.
2. Apply a specialist care product to the rubber seals.

The weather strips on the doors, windows, bonnet and rear lid will remain pliable and last longer if they are treated with a suitable care product (for example silicone spray).

Caring for rubber seals will also prevent premature ageing and leaks. The doors will be easier to open. If rubber seals are well looked after, they will not freeze so quickly in winter. ■

Door lock cylinders

The door lock cylinders can freeze up in winter.

To de-ice the lock cylinders you should only use spray with lubricating and anti-corrosive properties. ■

Cleaning chrome parts

1. Clean chrome parts with a damp cloth.
2. Polish chrome parts with a soft, dry cloth. ▶

If this does not provide satisfying results, use a specialist **chrome cleaning product**. Chrome cleaning products will remove stains and coatings from the surface.

Caution

To prevent scratching chrome surfaces:

- Never use an abrasive care product on chrome.
- Do not clean or polish chrome parts in a sandy or dusty environment. ■

Steel wheels

– Clean steel wheels regularly using a separate sponge.

Use an industrial cleanser to remove brake dust. Any damage to the paint on steel wheels should be repaired before the metal starts to rust.

WARNING

- **Never wash tyres with a cylindrical jet. Even at large spraying distances and short cleaning times, visible and invisible damage can occur to the tyres. This may cause an accident.**
- **Moisture, ice and salt on the brakes may affect braking efficiency. Risk of accident. If possible, avoid sudden braking immediately after washing the vehicle. You must "dry" the brakes by applying the brakes carefully several times ⇒ page 152, "Braking effect and braking distance".** ■

Cleaning alloy wheels

Every two weeks

– Wash salt and brake dust from alloy wheels.

– Use an acid free detergent to clean the wheels.

Every three months

– Apply a hard wax compound to the wheels.

Alloy wheels require regular attention to preserve their appearance. It is important to remove road salt and brake dust by washing the wheels at regular intervals, otherwise the finish will be impaired.

Always use an acid-free detergent for alloy wheels.

Car polish or other abrasive agents should not be used. If the protective coating is damaged, e.g. by stone impact, the damaged area should be repaired immediately.

WARNING

- **Never wash tyres with a cylindrical jet. Even at large spraying distances and short cleaning times, visible and invisible damage can occur to the tyres. This may cause an accident.**
- **Moisture, ice and salt on the brakes may affect braking efficiency. Risk of accident. If possible, avoid sudden braking immediately after washing the vehicle. You must "dry" the brakes by applying the brakes carefully several times ⇒ page 152, "Braking effect and braking distance".** ■

Underbody sealant

The underside of the vehicle is coated to protect it from corrosion and damage.

The protective coating could be damaged when driving. We recommend that the protective coating under the body and on the running gear should be checked, and reinstated if necessary, before and after the winter season.

We recommend that repair work and additional anti-corrosion work is carried out by your Authorised Service Centre.

WARNING

Do not apply underseal or anti-corrosion coatings to the exhaust pipes, catalytic converter or the heat shields on the exhaust system. The heat of the exhaust system or the engine could cause them to ignite! This is a fire hazard. ■

Cleaning the engine compartment

Take special care when cleaning the engine compartment.

Anti-corrosion treatment

The engine compartment and the surface of the power unit are given anti-corrosion treatment at the factory.

Good corrosion protection is particularly important in winter when the car is frequently driven on salted roads. To prevent the salt corroding the vehicle, the entire engine compartment should be thoroughly cleaned before and after the salting period.

Your Authorised Service Centre is able to provide the correct cleaning and preserving products and has the necessary equipment. For this reason, we recommend having this work performed by them.

The anti-corrosion protection is usually removed if the engine compartment is cleaned with grease removing solutions, or if you have the engine cleaned. If this job is carried out, you should ensure that all surfaces, seams, joints and components in the engine compartment are given anti-corrosion treatment afterwards.

WARNING

- **When working in the engine compartment, always observe the safety warnings ⇒ page 179.**
- **Switch off the engine, apply the parking brake firmly and always remove the key from the ignition before you open the bonnet.**
- **Allow the engine to cool before you clean the engine compartment.**
- **Do not clean the underside of vehicle, wheel arches without protecting your hands and arms. You may cut yourself on sharp-edged metal parts. Failure to comply could result in injury.**
- **Moisture, ice and salt on the brakes may affect braking efficiency. Risk of accident. If possible, avoid sudden braking immediately after washing the vehicle.**
- **Never touch the radiator fan. It is temperature-controlled and could start automatically, even when the key is removed from the ignition!**

For the sake of the environment

Fuel, grease and oil deposits could be removed when the engine is washed. The polluted water must be cleaned in an oil separator. For this reason, engine washing should be carried out only by a qualified workshop or a suitable filling station. ■

Care of the vehicle interior

Cleaning plastic parts and the dash panel

– Use a clean, damp cloth to clean plastic parts and the dash panel.

– If this does not provide satisfactory results, use a special **solvent-free** plastic cleaning product.

WARNING

Never clean the dash panel and surface of the airbag module with cleansers containing solvents. Solvents cause the surface to become porous. If the airbag inflates, disintegrating plastic parts can cause substantial injuries.

Caution

Cleaning products which contain solvents will damage the material. ■

Cleaning wooden trim*

– Clean the wooden trim with a clean cloth moistened with water.

– If this does not provide satisfactory results, use a *gentle* soap solution.

Caution

Cleaning products which contain solvents will damage the material. ■

Cleaning cloth seat covers and fabric trim

Cloth seat covers and fabric trim on the doors, headlining etc. can be cleaned with a special interior cleanser or with dry foam and a soft brush. ■

Cleaning leather*

Normal cleaning

– Moisten a cotton or woollen cloth with water and wipe over the leather surfaces.

Cleaning stubborn stains

– More stubborn dirt can be removed using a mild soap solution (pure liquid soap; two tablespoons diluted in one litre of water) and a cloth.

– Do not let the water soak through the leather or soak into the seams.

– Then wipe off with a soft, dry cloth.

Leather care

– The leather should be treated regularly (about twice a year) with a special leather-care product, which is available from your Authorised Service Centre.

– Apply these products very sparingly.

– Then wipe off with a soft, dry cloth. ▶

SEAT does everything possible to preserve the special qualities of leather, as a natural product. Because of the natural properties of the specially selected hides employed, the finished leather has a certain sensitivity to grease and dirt, etc. so a degree of care is required in everyday use and when looking after the leather.

Dust and grit in the pores and seams can scratch and damage the surface. If the vehicle is left standing in the sun for long periods, the leather should be protected against direct sunlight to prevent it from fading. However, slight colour variations in high-quality natural leather are normal.

Caution

- Do not use solvents, wax polish, shoe cream, spot removers or similar products on leather.
- To avoid damage, stubborn stains should be removed by a qualified workshop. ■

Cleaning seat belts

A dirty belt may stop the seat belt working properly.

Keep the seat belts clean and check all seat belts regularly.

Cleaning seat belts

– Carefully pull the dirty seat belt right out and leave it out.

– Clean the dirty seat belts with a *gentle* soap solution.

– Allow the seat belt fabric to dry.

– Do not roll up the seat belt until it is dry.

If large stains form on the belts the belt will not retract correctly into the automatic belt retractor.

WARNING

- **Do not use chemical cleaning agents on the seat belts, as this can impair the strength of the webbing. Ensure that the belts do not come into contact with corrosive fluids.**
- **Check the condition of all seat belts at regular intervals. If you notice that the belt webbing, fittings, retractor mechanism or buckle of any of the belts is damaged, the belt must be replaced by a specialist workshop.**
- **Do not attempt to repair a damaged seat belt yourself. The seat belts must not be removed or modified in any way.**

Caution

After cleaning, allow seat belts to dry completely before rolling them up. Otherwise the belt retractors could become damaged. ■

Accessories, parts replacement and modifications

Accessories and parts

Always consult an Authorised Service Centre before purchasing accessories and parts.

Your vehicle is designed to offer a high standard of active and passive safety.

Before purchasing accessories and parts, and before making technical changes to your car, we recommend that you consult your Authorised Service Centre.

SEAT dealerships will be happy to provide you with the latest information about the use, legal requirements and recommendations from the manufacturer regarding accessories and parts.

We recommend you use only **SEAT Approved Accessories®** and **SEAT Approved Spare Parts®**. This way, SEAT can guarantee that the product in question is suitable, reliable and safe. Authorised Service Centres have the necessary experience and facilities to ensure that parts are installed correctly and professionally.

Despite continuous observation of the market, SEAT is not able to assess the reliability, safety and suitability of parts **not approved by SEAT**. For this reason SEAT cannot assume responsibility for any non-genuine parts used, even if these parts have been approved by an official testing agency or are covered by an official approval certificate.

Any **equipment subsequently installed** which has a direct effect on the vehicle and/or the way it is driven (e.g. cruise control system or electronically-controlled suspension) must be approved by SEAT for use in your vehicle and bear the **e** mark (the European Union's authorisation symbol).

If any **additional electrical components** are fitted which do not serve to control the vehicle itself (for instance a refrigerator box, laptop or ventilator fan, etc.), these must bear the **CE** mark (European Union manufacturer conformity declaration).

WARNING

Accessories, for example telephone holders or drink holders, should never be fitted on the covers of, or within the working range of, the airbags. If they are, there is a danger of resulting injury if the airbag is triggered in an accident. ■

Modifications

Modifications must always be carried out according to our specifications.

Unauthorised modifications to the electronic components or software in the vehicle may cause malfunctions. Due to the way the electronic components are linked together in networks, other systems may be affected by the faults. This can seriously impair safety, lead to excessive wear of components, and also invalidate your vehicle registration documents.

SEAT Authorised Service Centres cannot be held liable for any damage caused by modifications and/or work performed incorrectly.

For this reason, we recommend that all work should be performed by an Authorised Service Centre using **Genuine SEAT®** approved parts and accessories. ▶

WARNING

Incorrectly performed modifications or other work on your vehicle can lead to malfunctions and cause accidents. ■

Roof aerial*

The vehicle may be fitted with a collapsible roof aerial* with antitheft system*, which can be folded backwards, when, for example, going through an automatic carwash.

To fold

Unscrew the aerial rod, tilting it backwards into a horizontal position and then screw in again.

To return to working position

Continue in the reverse order to that given in the previous instruction.

Caution

Before putting the vehicle in a carwash tunnel, do not tighten the aerial if it is folded as this may cause damage. ■

Mobile telephones and two-way radios

You will require an external aerial for mobile phones and two-way radios.

SEAT has approved your vehicle for use with mobile telephones and two-way radios providing the following conditions are observed:

- The correct installation of an external aerial,
- transmitting power of maximum 10 watts.

An external aerial is needed to give the equipment its optimal range.

First consult your Authorised Service Centre if you wish to use a mobile telephone or a two-way radio with a transmitting power in excess of 10 watts. Here you will receive information concerning the technical possibilities for retrofitting this equipment.

Mobile telephones and two-way radios should be fitted only by a qualified workshop, for example an Authorised Service Centre.

WARNING

- **Always concentrate primarily on driving. If you are distracted while driving you could have an accident.**
- **Never attach the telephone mountings to the surfaces covering the airbag units or within the range of the airbags, danger of injury if the airbag is triggered.**
- **If you use mobile telephones or two-way radios in the vehicle without an external aerial, electromagnetic radiation in the vehicle could exceed authorised limits. This also applies to external aerials that have not been correctly installed.**

Caution

Failure to observe the above conditions could cause the electronics to malfunction. The most common causes of faults are:

- no external aerial,
- external aerial incorrectly installed,
- transmitting power in excess of 10 watts.

Note

Please observe the operating instructions of your mobile telephone / two-way radio. ■

Fitting a towing bracket*

It is possible to fit a towing bracket to the rear of the vehicle.

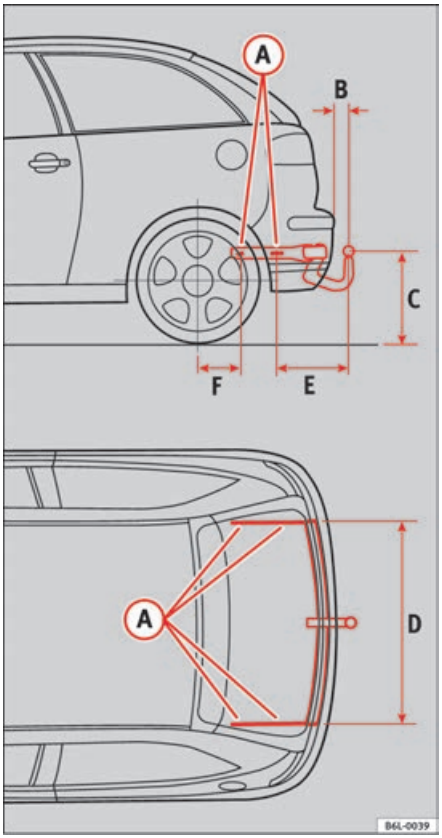

Fig. 124 Attachment points for towing bracket

If a towing bracket is to be fitted after the vehicle is purchased, this must be completed according to the instructions of the towing bracket manufacturer.

The attachment points for the towing bracket (A) are underneath the vehicle.

The distance between the centre of the ball coupling and the ground should never be lower than the measurement indicated when the vehicle is fully loaded including the maximum resting weight.

Measurement for securing the towing bracket:

(B) 65 mm (minimum)
(C) from 350 mm to 420 mm (fully laden vehicle)
(D) 960 mm
(E) 345 mm
(F) 188 mm

Fitting a towing bracket

- Driving with a trailer implies additional work for the vehicle. Therefore, before fitting a towing bracket, please contact an Authorised Service Centre to check whether your cooling system needs modification.
- Observe the legal requirements in your country (e.g. the fitting of a separate warning lamp).
- Certain vehicle components, e.g. the rear bumper must be removed and reinstalled. The towing bracket securing bolts must be tightened using a torque wrench, and an electrical socket must be used to connect to the vehicle's electrical system. This requires specialist knowledge and tools.
- The figures in the illustration show the dimensions and attachment points that must be observed if you are retrofitting a towing bracket.

WARNING

Towing brackets should be fitted by specialists.

- **If the towing bracket is incorrectly installed, there is serious danger of an accident.**

WARNING (continued)

- **For your own safety, please observe the instructions provided by the manufacturer of the towing bracket.**

Caution

- If the electrical socket is incorrectly installed, this could cause damage to the vehicle's electrical system.

Note

For the sports model (FR, SPORT, CUPRA...), fitting of a trailer bracket is not recommended due to the design of the bumpers. ■

Checking and refilling levels

Refuelling

The tank flap is released manually. The tank holds approximately 45 litres.

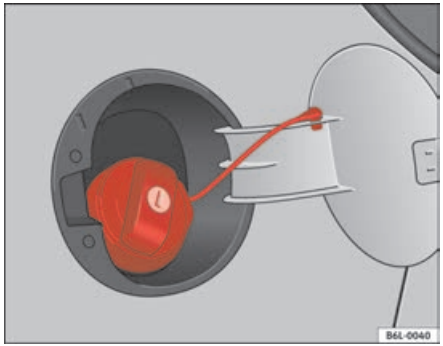

Fig. 125 Tank flap open

Unscrewing the tank cap

– Lift the lid.

– Grip the cap and then insert the key into the lock and rotate 180° to the left.

– Unscrew the cap, turning it anti-clockwise.

Closing the tank cap

– Screw the tank cap to the right, until the point of feeling a “click”.

– Turn the key in the lock, without releasing the cap in the clockwise direction 180°.

– Remove the key and close the flap until it clicks into place. The tank cap is secured with an anti-loss attachment

The tank flap is at the rear of the vehicle on the right.

If the automatic filler nozzle is operated correctly, it will switch itself off as soon as the tank is “full”. Never attempt to fill beyond this point, as this will fill the expansion chamber. Fuel may leak out if ambient conditions are warm.

The correct fuel grade for your vehicle is given on a sticker on the inside of the fuel tank flap,

WARNING

- **Fuel is highly inflammable and can cause serious burns and other injuries.**
  - **Never smoke or use any naked flame when filling the fuel tank of the vehicle, or a spare fuel canister, with fuel. This is an explosion hazard.**
  - **Follow legal requirements for the use of spare fuel canisters.**
  - **For safety reasons we do not recommend carrying a spare fuel canister in the vehicle. The canister could be damaged in an accident and leak.**
- **If, in exceptional circumstances, you have to carry a spare fuel canister, please observe the following points:**
  - **Never fill the spare fuel canister inside the vehicle or on it. An electrostatic charge could build up during filling, causing the fuel fumes to ignite. This may be fatally explosive. Always place the canister on the ground to fill it.**

WARNING (continued)

– **Insert the fuel nozzle into the mouth of the canister as far as possible.**

– **If the spare fuel canister is made of metal, the filling nozzle must be in contact with the canister during filling. This helps prevent an electrostatic charge building up.**

– **Never spill fuel in the vehicle or in the luggage compartment. Fuel vapours are explosive. Danger of death.**

Caution

- Fuel spills should be removed from the paintwork immediately.
- Never run the tank completely dry. An irregular fuel supply could cause misfiring. As a result, unburnt fuel could enter the catalytic converter and cause damage.

For the sake of the environment

Do not try to put in more fuel after the automatic filler nozzle has switched off; this may cause the fuel to overflow if it becomes warm. ■

Petrol

Petrol types

The correct petrol types are listed on a sticker inside the fuel tank flap.

Only **unleaded petrol, corresponding to the standard DIN EN 228**, may be used for vehicles with catalytic converters (EN = “European Norm”).

Fuel types are differentiated by the **octane rating**, e.g: 91, 95, 98 RON (RON = “Regulation Octane Number, unit for determining the knock resistance of petrol”). You may use petrol with a higher octane number than the one recommended for your engine. However, this has no advantage in terms of fuel consumption and engine power.

Caution

- Even one tankfull of leaded fuel would permanently impair the efficiency of the catalytic converter.
- High engine speed and full throttle can damage the engine when using petrol with an octane rating lower than the correct grade for the engine.

For the sake of the environment

Just one full tank of leaded fuel would seriously impair the efficiency of the catalytic converter. ■

Petrol additives

Petrol additives improve the quality of the petrol.

The quality of the petrol influences running behaviour, performance and service life of the engine. For this reason you should use good quality petrol containing additives. These additives will help to prevent corrosion, keep the fuel system clean and prevent deposits from building up in the engine.

If good quality petrol with additives is not available or engine problems occur, the required additives must be added during refuelling. ■

Diesel

Diesel*

Diesel fuel must correspond to DIN EN 590 (EN = “European standard”). It must have a cetane number (CN) of at least 51. The cetane number indicates the ignition quality of the diesel fuel.

Notes on filling with fuel ⇒ page 176. ■

RME fuel*

Only those vehicles fitted with special equipment (number PR 2G0 for biodiesel use) may use biodiesel corresponding to the standard DIN EN 14214.

The biodiesel fuel must comply with the DIN EN 14.214 (FAME) Standard.

- Biodiesel is a methylester obtained from rapeseed oil.
- DIN is a German abbreviation for “**D**eutsches **I**nstitut für **N**ormung e.V.”, the German standards institute.
- EN means **E**uropean **N**orm.
- FAME is the English abbreviation “**F**atty **A**cid **M**ethyl **E**ster”

If the date sticker of the vehicle includes the number PR 2G0 optional equipment) this means that that vehicle has been prepared for biodiesel use.

Your Authorised Service Centre or automobile association will be able to advise on where you can obtain RME biodiesel fuel.

Your Authorised Service Centre can also be consulted to know if the vehicle has been prepared for biodiesel use.

Things to note about RME fuel (biodiesel)

- The performance of a vehicle using biodiesel maybe somewhat reduced.
- Fuel consumption of a vehicle using biodiesel may be slightly higher.
- RME fuel can be used in winter at temperatures down to approx. -10°C.
- At outside temperatures below -10°C, we recommend using winter diesel fuel.

Caution

- RME fuel can damage the fuel system in vehicles that are not suitably adjusted.
- If you decide to use biodiesel in your vehicle, please use only RME fuel which is DIN E 14,214 compliant.
- If you use biodiesel that does not meet the required standard, the fuel filter could become clogged.

Note

- In case of low exterior temperatures and a fuel biodiesel percentage of higher than 50%, an increase in gas emission may occur during operation of the independent heating.
- The fuel filter may become clogged when fuel is changed to biodiesel. For this reason, we recommend that, about every 300 or 400 km, following a fuel change, also change the fuel filter. Also note the instructions in the Inspection and Maintenance plan.
- If the vehicle is to remain parked for more than about two weeks, we recommend filling the fuel tank with biodiesel and driving about 50 km in order to avoid damage to the injection system. ■

Winter driving

Diesel can thicken in winter.

Winter-grade diesel

When using “summer-grade diesel fuel”, difficulties may be experienced at sub-zero temperatures because the fuel thickens due to wax separation. For this reason, “winter-grade diesel fuel” is available in some countries during the cold months. It can be used at temperatures as low as -22°C.

In countries with different climatic conditions the diesel fuel sold generally has different temperature characteristics. Check with an Authorised Service Centre or filling stations in the country concerned regarding the type of diesel fuels available.

Filter pre-heater

Your vehicle is fitted with a fuel filter pre-heater, making it well equipped for operation in winter. This ensures that the fuel system remains operational to approx. -24°C, provided you use winter-grade diesel which is safe to -15°C.

However, if the fuel has waxed to such an extent that the engine will not start at temperatures of under -24°C, simply place the vehicle in a warm place for a while.

Caution

Do not mix fuel additives (“thinners”, or similar additives) with diesel fuel. ■

Working in the engine compartment

Safety instructions on working in the engine compartment

Any work carried out in the engine compartment or on the engine must be carried out cautiously.

Before starting any work on the engine or in the engine compartment:

1. Switch off the engine and remove the key from the ignition.
2. Apply the handbrake.
3. Move the gear stick to neutral or the selector lever to position P.
4. Wait for the engine to cool down.
5. Keep children away from the vehicle.
6. Raise the bonnet ⇒ page 181.

You should not do any work in the engine compartment unless you know exactly how to carry out the jobs and have the correct tools! Have the work carried out by a qualified workshop if you are uncertain.

All service fluids and consumables, e.g. coolant, engine oil, spark plugs and batteries, are being constantly developed. SEAT provides a constant flow of information to the Authorised Service Centres concerning modifications. For this reason we recommend that you have service fluids and consumables replaced by an Authorised Service Centre. Please observe the relevant instructions ⇒ page 171. The engine compartment of any motor vehicle is a hazardous area ⇒ ⚠.

WARNING

All work on the engine or in the engine compartment, e.g. checking and refilling fluids, involves the danger of injury and scalding as well as the risk of accident or fire.

- **Never open the bonnet if you see steam, smoke or coolant escaping from the engine compartment. Otherwise, there is a risk of sustaining burns. Wait until no more steam or coolant is emitted, then allow the engine to cool before carefully opening the bonnet.**
- **Switch off the engine and remove the key from the ignition.**
- **Apply the handbrake and move the gear stick to neutral or selector lever to position P.**
- **Keep children away from the vehicle.**
- **Never touch hot engine parts. There is a risk of burns.**
- **Never spill liquids on a hot engine or on a hot exhaust gas system. This is a fire hazard.**
- **Avoid causing short-circuits in the electrical system, particularly at the points where the jump leads are attached ⇒ page 229. The battery could explode.**
- **Never touch the radiator fan. It is temperature controlled and could start automatically, even when the engine has been switched off and the key removed from the ignition!**
- **Do not unscrew the cap on the expansion tank when the engine is hot. If the coolant is hot, the cooling system will be pressurised!**
- **Protect face, hands and arms by covering the cap with a large, thick cloth to protect against escaping coolant and steam.**
- **Always make sure you have not left any objects, such as cleaning cloths and tools, in the engine compartment.**
- **If you have to work underneath the vehicle, you must use suitable stands additionally to support the vehicle, there is a risk of accident!. A hydraulic jack is insufficient for securing the vehicle and there is a risk of injury.**

WARNING (continued)

- **If any work has to be performed when the engine is started or with the engine running, there is an additional, potentially fatal, safety risk from the rotating parts, such as the drive belts, alternator, radiator fan, etc., and from the high-voltage ignition system. You should also observe the following points:**
  - **Never touch the electrical wiring of the ignition system.**
  - **Ensure that jewellery, loose clothing and long hair do not get trapped in rotating engine parts. Danger of death. Before starting any work remove jewellery, tie back and cover hair, and wear tight-fitting clothes.**
  - **Always think carefully about pressing the accelerator if a gear is engaged in either an automatic or manual gearbox. The vehicle could move, even if the handbrake is applied. Danger of death.**
- **If work has to be carried out on the fuel system or on electrical components, you must observe the following safety notes in addition to the above warnings:**
  - **Always disconnect the battery. The vehicle must be unlocked when this is done, otherwise the alarm will be triggered.**
  - **Do not smoke.**
  - **Never work near naked flames.**
  - **Always have a fire extinguisher on hand.**

Caution

When changing or topping up service fluids, make absolutely certain that you fill the fluids into the correct reservoirs. Failure to observe this point will result in serious malfunctions and engine damage!

For the sake of the environment

Service fluids leaks are harmful to the environment. For this reason you should make regular checks on the ground underneath your vehicle. If you find spots of oil or other fluids, have your vehicle inspected in a qualified workshop. ■

Opening the bonnet

The bonnet is released from inside the vehicle.

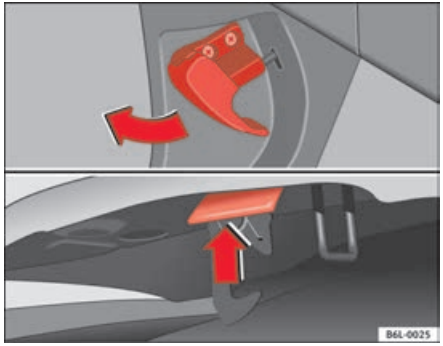

Fig. 126 Arrester hook for bonnet.

Before opening the bonnet ensure that the windscreen wipers are in rest position.

– To release the bonnet, pull the lever under the dashboard ⇒ fig. 126 in the direction indicated (arrow). The bonnet will be released by a spring action ⇒ ⚠.

– Lift the bonnet using the release lever (arrow) and open the bonnet.

– Release the bonnet stay and secure it in fixture designed for this in the bonnet.

⚠ WARNING

Hot coolant can scald!

- **Never open the bonnet if you see steam, smoke or coolant escaping from the engine compartment.**
- **Wait until no more steam, smoke or coolant is emitted from the bonnet, then carefully open the bonnet.**
- **When working in the engine compartment, always observe the safety warnings ⇒ page 179.** ■

Closing the bonnet

– Raise the bonnet slightly.

– Release the bonnet stay and replace it in its support.

– At a height of about 30 cm let it fall so it is locked.

If the bonnet does not close, do not press downwards. Open it once more and let it fall as before.

⚠ WARNING

If the bonnet is not closed properly, it could open while you are driving and completely obscure your view of the road. Risk of accident.

WARNING (continued)

- **After closing the bonnet, always check that it is properly secured. The bonnet must be flush with the surrounding body panels.**
- **If you notice that the bonnet latch is not secured when the vehicle is moving, stop the vehicle immediately and close the bonnet properly. Risk of accident.** ■

Engine oil

Engine oil specifications

The engine oil used must conform with exact specifications.

Specifications

The engine comes with a special, high quality, multi grade oil that can be used in all seasons of the year except for those regions affected by extreme cold.

As the use of good quality oil is necessary for the correct operation and long service life of the engine, when it becomes necessary to replenish or change the oil, always use an oil that complies to the VW standards.

If it is not possible to find oil conforming to the VW standards then oil conforming to the ACEA or API standards with an appropriate viscosity at atmospheric temperature should be used instead. The use of this type of oil may have some repercussions on the performance of the engine for example, long starting time, increased consumption and a higher emission level.

If a top up is required then different oils may be mixed as long as they all conform to the VW standards.

The specifications (VW standards) set out in the following page should appear on the container of the service oil; the container will display together the different standards for petrol and diesel engines, the oil can be used for both types of engines. ■

Oil properties

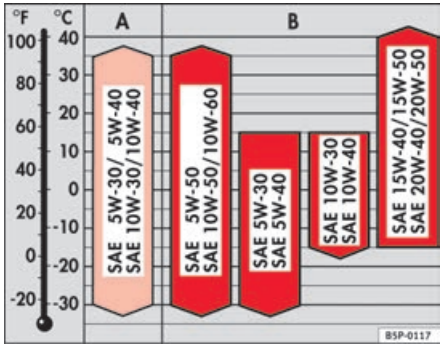

Fig. 127 Types of oil according to temperature

Viscosity

The viscosity class of the oil is selected according to the diagram.

When the ambient temperature falls outside the limits of the scale for a short period, an oil change is not required.

Engine type	Specification
Petrol	VW 501 01/ VW 502 00/ VW 504 00
Diesel	VW 505 00/ VW 505 01/ VW 507 00/ VW 506 01
Diesel Injector Pump [a)]	VW 505 01/ VW 507 00/ VW 506 01
Diesel Injector Pump Motor 118 kW[a)]	VW 506 01/ VW 507 00
Diesel Engines with Particulate filter (DPF)[a)]	VW 507 00

a) Only use recommended oils, otherwise you may damage the engine.

Mono-grade oil

Single grade oils are generally not suitable for all year round use, due to ranges of viscosity[6)].

These oils are only useful in a climate that is constantly very cold or very warm.

Engine oil additives

No type of additive should be mixed with the engine oil. The deterioration caused by these additives is not covered by the warranty.

6) Viscosity: oil density

Note

Before a long trip, we recommend finding an engine oil that conforms to the corresponding VW specifications and keeping it in the vehicle. This way, the correct engine oil will always be available for a top-up if needed. ■

Checking the engine oil level

The engine oil dipstick indicates the level of the oil.

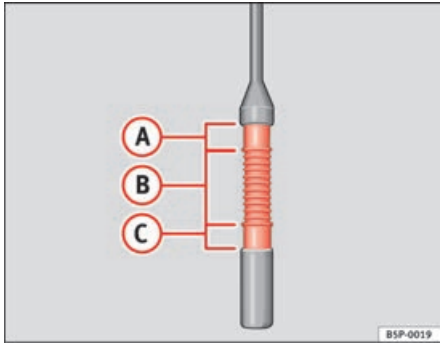

Fig. 128 Engine oil dipstick.

Checking oil level

– Park the vehicle where it is horizontal.

– Briefly let the engine idle until the service temperature is reached, then stop.

– Wait two minutes.

– Pull out the dipstick. Wipe the dipstick with a clean cloth and insert it again, pushing it in as far as it will go.

– Then pull it out once more and check the oil level ⇒ fig. 128. Top up with engine oil if necessary.

Oil level in area (A)

- Do not add oil.

Oil level in area (B)

- Oil **can** be topped up. The indicated oil level should be **after** the zone (A)

Oil level in area (C)

- Oil **must** be topped up. The indicated oil level should be **after** the zone (A)

Depending on how you drive and the conditions in which the car is used, oil consumption can be up to 0.5 ltr./1000 km. Oil consumption is likely to be higher for the first 5000 km. For this reason the engine oil level must be checked at regular intervals, preferably when filling the tank and before a journey.

WARNING

Any work carried out in the engine compartment or on the engine must be carried out cautiously.

- **When working in the engine compartment, always observe the safety warnings ⇒ page 179.**

Caution

If the oil level is above the area (A) do not start the engine. This could result in damage to the engine and catalytic converter. Contact an Authorised Service Centre. ■

Topping up engine oil

Top up gradually with small quantities of oil.

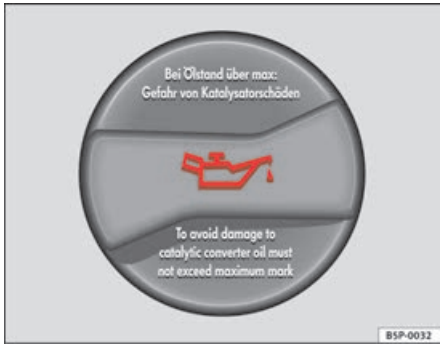

Fig. 129 In the engine compartment: Engine oil filler cap

Before opening the bonnet, read and observe the warnings ⇒ ⚠ in "Safety instructions on working in the engine compartment" on page 179.

– Unscrew cap from oil filler opening ⇒ fig. 129.

– Top-up oil in small amounts, using the correct oil.

– To avoid over-filling with engine oil, you should top-up using small quantities, wait a while and check the oil level before adding any more oil.

– As soon as the oil level is in area (B), carefully close the cap.

The position of the oil filler opening is shown in the corresponding engine compartment diagram ⇒ page 240.

Engine oil specification ⇒ page 182.

⚠ WARNING

Oil is highly inflammable! Ensure that no oil comes into contact with hot engine components when topping up.

Caution

If the oil level is above the area (A) do not start the engine. This could result in damage to the engine and catalytic converter. Contact a qualified workshop.

For the sake of the environment

The oil level must never be above area (A). Otherwise oil can be drawn in through the crankcase breather and escape into the atmosphere via the exhaust system. ■

Changing engine oil

The engine oil must be changed at the intervals given in the service schedule.

We recommend that you have the engine oil changed by an Authorised Service Centre.

The oil change intervals are shown in the Maintenance Programme.

⚠ WARNING

Only change the oil yourself if you have the specialist knowledge required! ▶

WARNING (continued)

- **Before opening the bonnet, read and observe the warnings ⇒ page 179, “Safety instructions on working in the engine compartment”.**
- **Wait for the engine to cool down. Hot oil may cause burn injuries.**
- **Wear eye protection to avoid injuries caused by splashes of oil.**
- **When removing the oil drain plug with your fingers, keep your arm horizontal to help prevent oil from running down your arm.**
- **Wash your skin thoroughly if it comes into contact with engine oil.**
- **Engine oil is poisonous! Used oil must be stored in a safe place out of the reach of children until it is disposed of.**

Caution

No additives should be used with engine oil. This could result in engine damage. Any damage caused by the use of such additives would not be covered by the factory warranty.

For the sake of the environment

- Because of the disposal problems, the necessary special tools and specialist knowledge required, we recommend that you have the engine oil and filter changed by an Authorised Service Centre.
- Never pour oil down drains or into the ground.
- Use a suitable container when draining the used oil. It has to be large enough to hold all the engine oil ■

Coolant

Coolant specifications

Coolant is a mixture of water and at least 40% coolant additive.

The cooling system must be filled with a mixture of water and at least 40 % of our coolant additive G 12+ or an additive with the specification TT-VW 774 F (it is dyed purple). This mixture gives the necessary frost protection down to -25°C and protects the alloy parts of the cooling system against corrosion. It also prevents scaling and raises the boiling point of the coolant.

The concentration of coolant must *always* be at least 40% - even if frost protection is not required.

If greater frost protection is required in very cold climates, the proportion of the antifreeze additive G 12+ can be increased. However, the percentage of coolant additives should not exceed 60%, as this would reduce the frost protection. It would also reduce the cooling effect. A mixture with 60% coolant additive will give frost protection to approx. -40°C.

WARNING

- **The coolant additive is toxic. There is a toxic risk. Always keep the coolant additive in the original container which should be stored out of the reach of children. The same applies to coolant that you have drained off.**
- **The coolant additive G 12+ must be added in sufficient quantities to provide anti-freeze protection at the coldest ambient temperatures that can be expected. At extremely cold ambient temperatures, the coolant could freeze, causing the vehicle to breakdown. As the heater would also not work in this situation, there is a risk of suffering exposure!**

Caution

- Other additives may give considerably inferior corrosion protection. The resulting corrosion in the cooling system can lead to a loss of coolant, causing serious damage to the engine.
- The coolant additive G 12+ (purple) can be mixed with the additive G 12 (red) or G 11. Never mix G12 (red colour) with G 11. ■

Checking the coolant level and topping up

The correct coolant level is important for fault-free functioning of the engine cooling system.

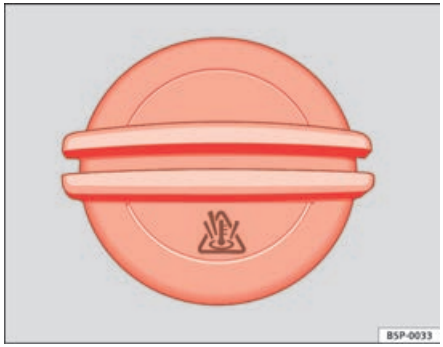

Fig. 130 In the engine compartment: Coolant expansion tank cap

Before opening the bonnet, read and observe the warnings ⇒ ⚠ in "Safety instructions on working in the engine compartment" on page 179.

Opening the coolant expansion tank

– Switch off the engine and allow it to cool.

– To prevent scalding, cover the cap on the expansion tank with a thick cloth and carefully unscrew the cap ⇒ ⚠.

Checking coolant level

– Look into the open coolant expansion tank and read off the coolant level.

– If the level is underneath the "MIN" mark, top up with coolant.

Topping up coolant

– Only use **new** coolant.

– Do not fill above the "MAX" mark.

Closing the coolant expansion tank

– Screw the cap on again *tightly*.

The position of the coolant expansion reservoir is shown in the corresponding engine compartment diagram ⇒ page 240.

Make sure that the coolant meets the required specifications ⇒ page 186. Do not use a different type of additive if coolant additive G 12+ is not available. In this case use only water and bring the coolant concentration back up to the correct level as soon as possible by putting in the specified additive ⇒ page 186.

Always top up with *new* coolant.

Do not fill above the "MAX" mark. Otherwise the excess coolant will be forced out of the cooling system when the engine is hot. ▶

The coolant additive G 12+ (dyed purple) may be mixed with G 12 (dyed red) and also with G 11.

WARNING

Any work carried out in the engine compartment or on the engine must be carried out cautiously.

- **When working in the engine compartment, always observe the safety warnings ⇒ page 179**
- **When the engine is warm or hot, the cooling system is pressurised! Do not unscrew the cap on the expansion tank when the engine is hot. This is a burn injury risk.**

Caution

- When mixed with other additives the colour of G 12 will change to brown. If this occurs you should have the coolant changed immediately. Failure to do so will result in engine damage!
- If a lot of coolant has been lost, wait for the engine to *cool down* before putting in cold coolant. This avoids damaging the engine. Large coolant losses are an indication of leaks in the cooling system. See a specialised workshop immediately and have the cooling system checked. Otherwise, there is a risk of engine damage. ■

Washer fluid and windscreen wiper blades

Topping up washer fluid

The water for cleaning the windscreen should always be mixed with washer fluid.

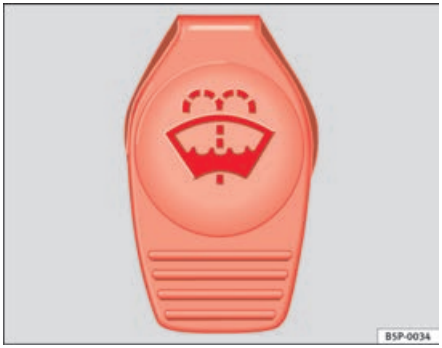

Fig. 131 In the engine compartment: Cap of windscreen washer fluid reservoir.

The **windscreen washer** and the **headlight washing system** are supplied with fluid from the windscreen washer fluid container in the engine compartment. The container holds approx. 2 litres; in vehicles with headlamp washers* it holds approx. 4.5 litres.

The reservoir is located on the right-hand side of the engine compartment.

Plain water is not enough to clean the windscreen and headlights. We recommend that you always add a product to the windscreen washer fluid. Approved windscreen cleaning products exist on the market with high detergent and anti-freeze properties, these may be added all-year-round. Please follow the dilution instructions on the packaging. ▶

WARNING

Any work carried out in the engine compartment or on the engine must be carried out cautiously.

- **When working in the engine compartment, always observe the safety warnings ⇒ page 179.**

Caution

- Never put radiator anti-freeze or other additives into the windscreen washer fluid.
- Always use approved windscreen cleansing products diluted as per instructions. If you use other washer fluids or soap solutions, the tiny holes in the fan-shaped nozzles could become blocked. ■

Changing windscreen wiper blades

If the windscreen wiper blades are in perfect condition, you will benefit from an improved visibility. Damaged wiper blades should be replaced immediately.

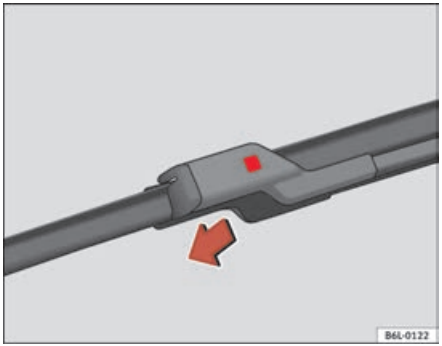

Fig. 132 Change windscreen wiper blade

Removing the wiper blade

– Lift the windscreen wiper arm.

– Press on the securing tab.

– Extract the wiper blade from the wiper arm.

Fitting the wiper blade

– Insert the wiper blade onto the windscreen wiper arm until it clicks into place.

– Make sure that the blade faces down when fitting a blade with integrated deflector blade. ▶

If the **windscreen wipers smear**, they should be replaced if they are damaged, or cleaned if they are soiled.

If this does not produce the desired results, the setting angle of the windscreen wiper arms might be incorrect. They should be checked by a qualified workshop and corrected if necessary.

WARNING

Do not drive unless you have good visibility through all windows!

- **Clean the windscreen wiper blades and all windows regularly.**
- **The wiper blades should be changed once or twice a year.**

Caution

- Damaged or dirty windscreen wipers could scratch the windscreen.
- Never use fuel, nail varnish remover, paint thinner or similar products to clean the windows. This could damage the windscreen wiper blades.
- Never move the windscreen wiper or windscreen wiper arm manually. This could cause damage.

Note

- The wiper arms can be moved to the service position only when the bonnet is properly closed. ■

Changing the rear wiper blade

A good rear wiper blade is essential for clear rear vision. Damaged wiper blades should be replaced immediately.

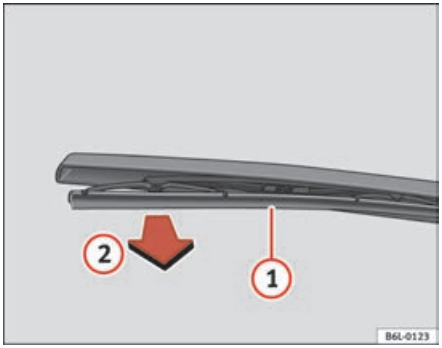

Fig. 133 Changing the rear window wiper blade

Removing the wiper blade

– Lift the rear wiper arm.

– Release the blade by pulling it in the direction of the arrow (2).

Fitting the wiper blade

– Insert the wiper blade onto the windscreen wiper arm until it clicks into place.

Check the condition of the wiper blade regularly. Change as required.

If the **windscreen wiper scrapes**, it should be replaced if damaged, or cleaned if soiled.

If this is not sufficient, refer to a qualified workshop. ▶

WARNING

Do not drive unless you have good visibility through all windows!

- **Clean the windscreen wiper blades and all windows regularly.**
- **The wiper blades should be changed once or twice a year.**

Caution

- A damaged or dirty window wiper could scratch the rear window.
- Never use fuel, nail varnish remover, paint thinner or similar products to clean the window.
- Never move the windscreen wiper by hand. This could cause damage. ■

Brake fluid

Checking the brake fluid level

The brake fluid is checked at the intervals given in the service schedule.

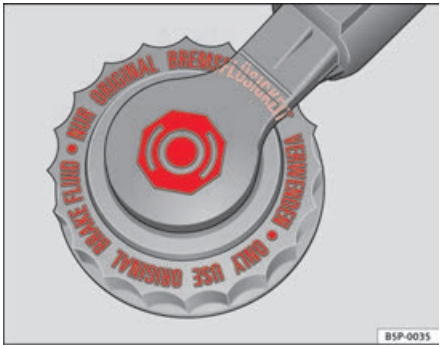

Fig. 134 In the engine compartment: Brake fluid reservoir cover

– Read off the fluid level at the transparent brake fluid reservoir. It should always be between the “MIN” and “MAX” marks.

The position of the brake fluid reservoir is shown in the corresponding engine compartment diagram ⇒ page 240. The brake fluid reservoir has a black and yellow cap.

The brake fluid level drops slightly when the vehicle is being used as the brake pads are automatically adjusted as they wear. ▶

However, if the level goes down noticeably in a short time, or drops below the "MIN" mark, there may be a leak in the brake system. A display on the instrument panel will warn you if the brake fluid level is too low ⇒ page 60.

WARNING

Before opening the bonnet to check the brake fluid level, read and observe the warnings ⇒ page 179. ■

Changing the brake fluid

The Maintenance Program indicates the brake fluid change intervals.

We recommend that you have the brake fluid changed by an Authorised Service Centre.

Before opening the bonnet, please read and follow the warnings ⇒ ⚠ in "Safety instructions on working in the engine compartment" on page 179 in "Working in the engine compartment".

Brake fluid absorbs moisture. In the course of time, it will absorb water from the ambient air. If the water content in the brake fluid is too high, the brake system could corrode. This also considerably reduces the boiling point of the brake fluid. Heavy use of the brakes may then cause a vapour lock which could impair the braking effect.

It is important that you use only use brake fluid compliant with the US standard FMVSS 116 DOT 4. We recommend the use of Genuine SEAT brake fluid.

WARNING

Brake fluid is poisonous. Old brake fluid impairs the braking effect.

WARNING (continued)

- **Before opening the bonnet to check the brake fluid level, read and observe the warnings ⇒ page 179.**
- **Brake fluid should be stored in the closed original container in a safe place out of reach of children. There is a toxic risk.**
- **Complete the brake fluid change according to the Maintenance Program. Heavy use of the brakes may cause a vapour lock if the brake fluid is left in the system for too long. This would seriously affect the efficiency of the brakes and the safety of the vehicle. This may cause an accident.**

Caution

Brake fluid could damage the paintwork. Wipe off any brake fluid from the paintwork immediately.

For the sake of the environment

Brake fluid must be drained and disposed of in the proper manner observing environmental regulations. ■

Battery

Warnings on handling the battery

	Wear eye protection
	Battery acid is very corrosive and caustic. Wear protective gloves and eye protection!
	Fires, sparks, naked lights and smoking are prohibited!
	A highly explosive mixture of gases is released when the battery is under charge.
	Keep children away from acid and batteries!

WARNING

Always be aware of the danger of injury and chemical burns as well as the risk of accident or fire when working on the battery and the electrical system:

- **Wear eye protection. Protect your eyes, skin and clothing from acid and particles containing lead.**
- **Battery acid is very corrosive and caustic. Wear protective gloves and eye protection. Do not tilt the batteries. This could spill acid through the vents. Rinse battery acid from eyes immediately for several minutes with clear water. Then seek medical care immediately. Neutralize any acid splashes on the skin or clothing with a soapy solution, and rinse off with plenty of water. If acid is swallowed by mistake, consult a doctor immediately.**
- **Fires, sparks, naked lights and smoking are prohibited. When handling cables and electrical equipment, avoid causing sparks and electrostatic**

WARNING (continued)

charge. Never short the battery terminals. High-energy sparks can cause injury.

- **A highly explosive mixture of gases is released when the battery is under charge. The batteries should be charged in a well-ventilated room only.**
- **Keep children away from acid and batteries.**
- **Before working on the electrical system, you must switch off the engine, the ignition and all consumers. The negative cable on the battery must be disconnected. When a light bulb is changed, you need only switch off the light.**
- **Deactivate the anti-theft alarm by unlocking the vehicle before you disconnect the battery! The alarm will otherwise be triggered.**
- **When disconnecting the battery from the vehicle electrical system, disconnect first the negative cable and then the positive cable.**
- **Switch off all electrical consumers before reconnecting the battery. Reconnect first the positive cable and then the negative cable. Never reverse the polarity of the connections. This could cause an electrical fire.**
- **Never charge a frozen battery, or one which has thawed. This could result in explosions and chemical burns. Always replace a battery that has frozen. A flat battery can freeze at temperatures around 0°C.**
- **Ensure that the vent hose is always connected to the battery.**
- **Never use a defective battery. This may be fatally explosive. Replace a damaged battery immediately.**

Caution

- Never disconnect the battery if the ignition is switched on or if the engine is running. This could damage the electrical system or electronic components.
- Do not expose the battery to direct sunlight over a long period of time, as the intense ultraviolet radiation can damage the battery housing.

- If the vehicle is left standing in cold conditions for a long period, protect the battery from frost. If it “freezes” it will be damaged. ■

Checking the electrolyte level

The electrolyte level should be checked regularly in high-mileage vehicles, in hot countries and in older batteries.

– Open the bonnet and open the battery cover at the front ⇒ ⚠ in “Safety instructions on working in the engine compartment” on page 179 ⇒ ⚠ in “Warnings on handling the battery” on page 193.

– Check the colour display in the "magic eye" on the top of the battery.

– If there are air bubbles in the window, tap the window gently until they disperse.

The position of the battery is shown in the corresponding engine compartment diagram ⇒ page 240.

The round window (“magic eye”) on the top of the battery changes colour, depending on the charge level and electrolyte level of the battery.

If the colour in the window is **colourless or bright yellow**, the electrolyte level of the battery is too low. Have the battery checked by a qualified workshop.

The colours green and black are used by the workshops for diagnostic purposes. ■

Charging and changing the vehicle battery

The battery is maintenance-free and is checked during the inspection service. All work on the vehicle battery requires specialist knowledge.

If you often drive short distances or if the vehicle is not driven for long periods, the battery should be checked by a qualified workshop between the scheduled services.

If the battery has discharged and you have problems starting the vehicle, the battery might be damaged. If this happens, we recommend you have the vehicle battery checked by an Authorised Service Centre where it will be recharged or replaced.

Charging the battery

The vehicle battery should be charged by a qualified workshop only, as batteries using special technology have been installed and they must be charged in a controlled environment.

Replacing a vehicle battery

The battery has been developed to suit the conditions of its location and has special safety features.

Genuine SEAT batteries fulfil the maintenance, performance and safety specifications of your vehicle.

⚠ WARNING

- **We recommend you use only maintenance-free or cycle free leak-proof batteries that comply with the standards T 825 06 and VW 7 50 73. This standard applies as of 2001.**
- **Before starting any work on the batteries, you must read and observe the warnings ⇒ ⚠ in “Warnings on handling the battery” on page 193.** ▶

For the sake of the environment

Batteries contain toxic substances such as sulphuric acid and lead. They must be disposed of appropriately and must not be disposed of with ordinary household waste. ■

Wheels

General notes

Avoiding damage

– If you have to drive over a kerb or similar obstacle, drive very slowly and as near as possible at a right angle to the kerb.

– Keep grease, oil and fuel off the tyres.

– Inspect the tyres regularly for damage (cuts, cracks or blisters, etc.). Remove any foreign objects embedded in the treads.

Storing tyres

– Mark tyres when you remove them to indicate the direction of rotation. This ensures you will be able to install them correctly when you replace them.

– When removed, the wheels and/or tyres should be stored in a cool, dry and preferably dark location.

– Store tyres in a vertical position if they are not fitted on wheel rims.

New tyres

New tyres have to be run in ⇒ page 151.

The tread depth of new tyres may vary, according to the type and make of tyre and the tread pattern.

Concealed damage

Damage to tyres and rims is often not readily visible. If you notice unusual vibrations or the car pulling to one side, this may indicate that one of the tyres is damaged. The tyres should be checked immediately by an Authorised Service Centre.

Tyres with directional tread pattern

An arrow on the tyre sidewall indicates the direction of rotation on tyres with directional tread. Always observe the direction of rotation indicated when fitting the wheel. This guarantees optimum grip and helps to avoid aqua-planing, excessive noise and wear.

WARNING

- **New tyres do not have maximum grip in the first 500 km. Drive particularly carefully to avoid risk of accident.**
- **Never drive with damaged tyres. This may cause an accident.**
- **If you notice unusual vibration or if the vehicle pulls to one side when driving, stop the vehicle immediately and check the tyres for damage.** ■

Checking tyre pressure

The correct tyre pressure can be seen on the sticker on the inside of the tank flap.

1. Read the required tyre inflation pressure from the sticker. The values refer to Summer tyres. For Winter tyres, you must add 0.2 bar to the values given on the sticker.
2. The tyre pressures should only be checked when the tyres are cold. The slightly raised pressures of warm tyres must not be reduced.
3. Adjust the tyre pressure to the load you are carrying.

Tyre pressure

The correct tyre pressure is especially important at high speeds. The pressure should therefore be checked at least once a month and before starting a journey.

WARNING

A tyre can easily burst if the pressure is too low, causing an accident!

- **At continuously high speeds, a tyre with insufficient pressure flexes more. In this way it becomes too hot, and this can cause tread separation and tyre blow-out. Always observe the recommended tyre pressures.**
- **If the tyre pressure is too low or too high, the tyres will wear prematurely and the vehicle will not handle well. Risk of accident!**

For the sake of the environment

Under-inflated tyres will increase fuel consumption. ■

Tyre service life

The service life of tyres is dependent on tyre pressure, driving style and fitting.

Fig. 135 Tyre tread wear indicators

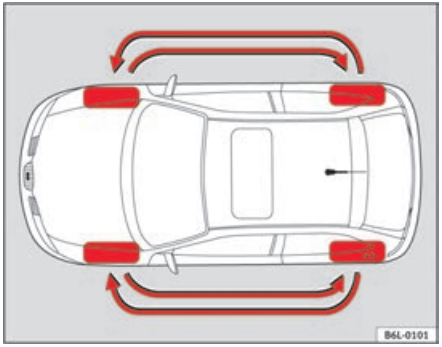

Fig. 136 Changing wheels ▶

Wear indicators

The original tyres on your vehicle have 1.6 mm high ⇒ page 196, fig. 135 "tread wear indicators" running across the tread. Depending on the make, there will be six to eight of them evenly spaced around the tyre. Markings on the tyre sidewall (for instance the letters "TWI" or other symbols) indicate the positions of the tread wear indicators. The minimum tread depth required by law is 1.6 mm (measured in the tread grooves next to the tread wear indicators). Worn tyres must be replaced. Different figures may apply in export countries ⇒ ⚠.

Tyre pressure

Incorrect tyre pressure causes premature wear and could cause tyre blow-out. For this reason, the tyre pressure should be checked at least once per month ⇒ page 196.

Driving style

Fast cornering, heavy acceleration and hard braking all increase tyre wear.

Changing wheels around

If the front tyres are worn considerably more than the rear ones it is advisable to change them around as shown ⇒ page 196, fig. 136. All the tyres will then last for about the same time.

Wheel balance

The wheels on new vehicles are balanced. However, various factors encountered in normal driving can cause them to become unbalanced, which results in steering vibration.

Unbalanced wheels should be rebalanced, as they otherwise cause excessive wear on steering, suspension and tyres. A wheel must also be rebalanced when a new tyre is fitted.

Incorrect wheel alignment

Incorrect wheel alignment causes excessive tyre wear, impairing the safety of the vehicle. If tyres show excessive wear, you should have the wheel alignment checked by an Authorised Service Centre.

⚠ WARNING

There is a serious danger of accidents if a tyre bursts during driving!

- **The tyres must be replaced at the latest when the tread is worn down to the tread wear indicators. Failure to do so could result in an accident. Worn tyres do not grip well at high speeds on wet roads. There is also a greater risk of "aquaplaning".**
- **At continuously high speeds, a tyre with insufficient pressure flexes more. This causes it to overheat. This can cause tread separation and tyre blow-out. Risk of accident. Always observe the recommended tyre pressures.**
- **If tyres show excessive wear, you should have the running gear checked by an Authorised Service Centre.**
- **Keep chemicals such as oil, fuel and brake fluid away from tyres.**
- **Damaged wheels and tyres must be replaced immediately!**

For the sake of the environment

Under-inflated tyres will increase fuel consumption. ■

New tyres and wheels

New tyres and wheels have to be run-in.

The tyres and wheel rims are an essential part of the vehicle's design. The tyres and rims approved by SEAT are specially matched to the characteristics of the vehicle and make a major contribution to good road holding and safe handling ⇒ ⚠.

Tyres should be replaced at least in pairs and not individually (i.e. both front tyres or both rear tyres together). A knowledge of tyre designations makes it ▶

easier to choose the correct tyres. Radial tyres have the tyre designations marked on the sidewall, for example:

195/65 R15 91T

This contains the following information:

195 Tyre width in mm
65 Height/width ratio in %
R Tyre construction: **R**adial
15 Rim diameter in inches
91 Load rating code
T Speed rating

The tyres could also have the following information:

- A direction of rotation symbol
- "Reinforced" denotes heavy-duty tyres.

The manufacturing date is also indicated on the tyre sidewall (possibly only on the inner side of the wheel).

"DOT ... 1103 ..." means, for example, that the tyre was produced in the 11th week of 2003.

We recommend that work on tyres and wheels is carried out by an Authorised Service Centre. They are familiar with the procedure and have the necessary special tools and spare parts as well as the proper facilities for disposing of the old tyres.

Any Authorised Service Centre has full information on the technical requirements when installing or changing tyres, wheels or wheel trims.

WARNING

- **We recommend that you use only wheels and tyres that have been approved by SEAT for your model. Failure to do so could impair vehicle handling. Risk of accident.**

WARNING (continued)

- **Avoid running the vehicle on tyres that are more than six years old. If you have no alternative, you should drive slowly and with extra care at all times.**
- **Never use old tyres or those with an unknown "history of use".**
- **If wheel trims are retrofitted, you must ensure that the flow of air to the brakes is not restricted. This could cause them to overheat.**
- **All four wheels must be fitted with radial tyres of the same type, size (rolling circumference) and the same tread pattern.**

For the sake of the environment

Old tyres must be disposed of according to the laws in the country concerned.

Note

- For technical reasons, it is not generally possible to use the wheels from other vehicles. This can also apply to wheels of the same model. The use of wheels or tyres which have not been approved by SEAT for use with your model may invalidate the vehicle's type approval for use on public roads.
- If the spare tyre is not the same as the tyres that are mounted on the vehicle - for example with winter tyres - you should only use the spare tyre for a short period of time and drive with extra care. Refit the normal road wheel as soon as possible. ■

Wheel bolts

Wheel bolts must be tightened to the correct torque.

The design of wheel bolts is matched to the rims. If different wheel rims are fitted, the correct wheel bolts with the right length and correctly shaped bolt ▶

heads must be used. This ensures that wheels are fitted securely and that the brake system functions correctly.

In certain circumstances, you may not use wheel bolts from a different car - even if it is the same model ⇒ page 171.

WARNING

If the wheel bolts are not tightened correctly, the wheel could become loose while driving. Risk of accident.

- **The wheel bolts must be clean and turn easily. Never apply grease or oil to them.**
- **Use only wheel bolts which belong to the wheel.**
- **If the prescribed torque of the wheel bolts is too low, they could loosen whilst the vehicle is in motion. Risk of accident! If the tightening torque is too high, the wheel bolts and threads could be damaged.**

Caution

The prescribed torque for wheel bolts for steel and alloy wheels is 120 Nm. ■

Winter tyres

Winter tyres will improve the vehicles handling on snow and ice.

In winter conditions winter tyres will considerably improve the vehicles handling. The design of summer tyres (width, rubber compound, tread pattern) gives less grip on ice and snow.

Winter tyres must be inflated to a **pressure** 0.2 bar higher than the pressures specified for summer tyres (see sticker on tank flap).

Winter tyres must be fitted on all four wheels.

Information on permitted **winter tyre sizes** can be found in the vehicle's registration documents. Use only radial winter tyres. All tyre sizes listed in the vehicle documentation also apply to winter tyres.

Winter tyres lose their effectiveness when the tread is worn down to a depth of 4 mm.

The speed rating code ⇒ page 197, “New tyres and wheels” determines the following **speed limits**: ⇒ ⚠ ⇒ ⚠

Q max. 160 km/h
S max. 180 km/h
T max. 190 km/h
H max. 210 km/h

In some countries, vehicles which can exceed the speed rating of the fitted tyre must have an appropriate sticker in the driver's field of view. These stickers are available from your Authorised Service Centre. The legal requirements of each country must be followed.

Do not have winter tyres fitted for unnecessarily long periods. Vehicles with summer tyres handle better when the roads are free of snow and ice.

If you have a flat tyre, please refer to the notes on the spare wheel ⇒ page 197, “New tyres and wheels”.

WARNING

The maximum speed for the winter tyres must not be exceeded. Otherwise, this could lead to tyre damage and thus, an accident risk.

For the sake of the environment

Fit your summer tyres in good time. They are quieter, do not wear so quickly and reduce fuel consumption. ▶

Note

- The rims of the IBIZA CUPRA have been designed so as not to obstruct the optional 4-cylinder brake unit.
- The CUPRA version has a specific tyre for driving in winter of 205/40 17 XL 84H. When you use this winter tyre, do not exceed 210 km/h. ■

Snow chains

Snow chains are only permitted on the front wheels and only for tyres 155/80 R13; 165/70 R14 and 185/80 R14. Snow chains must have fine-pitch links which do not protrude more than 15 mm, including tension device.

Remaining tyres can be fitted with chains no thicker than 9 mm.

Remove wheel hub covers and trim rings before fitting snow chains. For safety reasons cover caps, available in any Authorised Service Centre, must then be fitted over the wheel bolts.

WARNING

Observe the fitting instructions provided by the snow chain manufacturer.

Caution

You must remove the snow chains to drive on roads which are free of snow. Otherwise they will impair handling, damage the tyres and wear out very quickly.

Note

In some countries, the speed limit for using snow chains is 50 km/h. The legal requirements of the country should be followed. ■

If and when

Vehicle tools, spare wheel

Vehicle Tools

The vehicle onboard tools are located under the floor panel in the luggage compartment.

– Lift floor panel

– Take the onboard tools out of the vehicle.

The tool kit includes:

- Jack*
- Hook for removing wheel covers* or hub caps*
- Box spanner for wheel bolts*
- Reversible screwdriver with handle (including hexagonal interior) for the wheel bolts. The screwdriver is a combination tool.
- Towing ring*
- Adapter for the anti-theft wheel bolts*

Some of the items listed are only provided on certain models / model years, or are optional extras.

WARNING

- **Do not use the hexagonal socket in the screwdriver handle to tighten the wheel bolts. It is impossible to tighten the bolts with the torque required, risk of accident.**

WARNING (continued)

- **The jack supplied by the factory is only designed for changing wheels on this model. On no account attempt to use it for lifting heavier vehicles or other loads, risk of injury.**
- **Use the jack only on firm, level ground.**
- **Never start the engine when the vehicle is on the jack, risk of accident.**
- **If work is to be carried out underneath the vehicle, this must be secured by suitable stands. Otherwise, there is a risk of injury.** ■

Tool box only for 17 inch wheel* - Cupra Version

Fig. 137 Tool box

On-board tools*/Jack*

The vehicle may also have:

1. Screwdriver with handle (including hexagonal interior) for the wheel bolts. The screwdriver blade is reversible.
2. Jack. Before replacing the jack in its compartment, fully insert the arm. Then, push the crank against the side of the jack.
3. Wire hook
4. Box spanner for wheel bolts
5. Towing eye

WARNING

- **The jack supplied by the factory is only for this model. It must never be used for other heavier vehicles or for other loads.**
- **Never start the engine when the car is raised. Risk of accident.**
- **When work is being carried out underneath the vehicle, it must be secured using suitable frames.**

Note

Never use the inner hexagon of the screwdriver for loosening or tightening the wheel bolts. ■

Compact temporary spare wheel*

If provided as part of the vehicle's equipment, the compact temporary spare wheel is only intended for temporary use over short distances.

The temporary spare wheel is stored under the floor panel in the luggage compartment and is attached by a thumbnut.

How to use the compact temporary spare wheel

Should you ever have a punctured tyre, the compact temporary spare wheel is only intended for temporary use until you can reach a workshop. The standard-size road wheel should be replaced as soon as possible.

Please note the following restrictions when using the compact temporary spare wheel. This spare wheel has been specially designed for your vehicle, thus, it cannot be changed with the spare wheel from another vehicle.

No other type of tyre (normal summer or winter tyre) may be fitted on the compact temporary spare wheel rim.

Snow chains

For technical reasons, snow chains must **not** be used on the compact temporary spare wheel.

If you should have a puncture on one of the *front wheels* when using snow chains, fit the compact temporary spare in place of one of the rear wheels. You can then attach the snow chains to the wheel taken from the rear and use this wheel to replace the punctured front wheel.

WARNING

- **The tyre pressures must be checked and corrected as soon as possible.**
- **Do not drive faster than 80 km/h. Higher speeds can cause an accident.**
- **Avoid heavy acceleration, hard braking and fast cornering, risk of accident.**
- **Never use two or more compact spare tyres at the same time, risk of accident.**
- **No other type of tyre (normal summer or winter tyre) may be fitted on the compact temporary spare wheel rim.** ■

17 inch spare wheel* - Cupra Version

The wheel is in a well under the carpet of the boot, secured with a threaded plastic nut.

Fig. 138 Access to the spare wheel

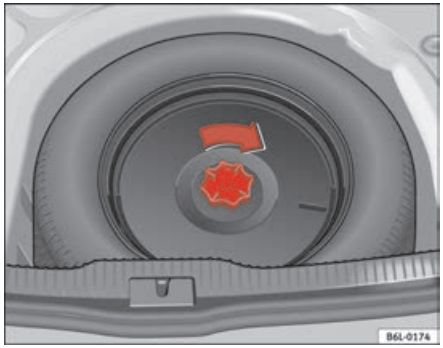

Fig. 139 Securing the defective wheel in the spare wheel well

Taking out the spare wheel[7)]

– Lift the carpet, then remove the plastic nut anticlockwise.

– Take out the tool box* and remove the spare wheel*.

Securing the defective wheel in the spare wheel well

– Put the defective wheel into its housing, and then put the tool box* into the hollow in the wheel.

– Turn the plastic nut clockwise until the defective wheel is well secured.

– Unhook the carpet and place it on the floor of the boot.

WARNING

Check that the spare wheel and the on-board tool box are well secured, to avoid injuring passengers if you crash or brake sharply. ■

Tyre repair kit*

The tyre repair kit (for vehicles not including a spare wheel) is stored under the floor panel in the luggage compartment.

Your vehicle is equipped with the Tyre Mobility System “Tyre repair kit”.

The tyre repair kit consists of a container with sealing compound to repair the puncture and a **compressor** to generate the required tyre pressure. The kit will reliably seal punctures up to a size of about 4 mm caused by the penetration of a foreign body into the tyre. ▶

7) The 17 inch spare wheel is only carried if the “SEAT Racing Brakes” option is selected.

Note

- Seek professional assistance if the repair of a tyre puncture is not possible with the sealing compound. ■

Wheel change

Preparation work

What you must do before changing a wheel.

– If you have a flat tyre or puncture, park the vehicle as far away from the flow of traffic as possible. Choose a location that is as level as possible.

– All passengers should leave the vehicle. They should wait in a safe area (for instance behind the roadside crash barrier).

– Switch off the engine. Switch on the hazard warning lights.

– Apply the **handbrake** firmly.

– Engage the **first gear**, or put the selector lever to position **P** for those vehicles with an automatic gearbox.

– If you are towing a trailer, unhitch it from your vehicle.

– Take the **vehicle tools** and the **spare wheel** out of the luggage compartment.

WARNING

Put the hazard warning lights on and place the warning triangle in position. This is for your own safety and also warns other road users.

Caution

If you have to change the tyre on a gradient, block the wheel opposite the wheel being changed by placing a stone or similar object under it to prevent the vehicle from rolling away.

Note

Please observe legal requirements when doing so. ■

Changing a wheel

Change the wheel as described below

– Pull off the **hub cap** see also ⇒ page 205.

– Slacken the **wheel bolts**.

– **Raise** the car with the jack in the corresponding zone

– **Take off** the wheel and then **put on** the spare wheel

– **Lower** the vehicle.

– Tighten the wheel bolts **firmly** in diagonal sequence with the box spanner

– Replace the **hub cap**. ■

After changing a wheel

After changing the wheel there are still tasks to complete.

– Put the tools and jack back in the luggage compartment.

– Place the wheel with the defective tyre in the luggage compartment and secure it.

– Check the tyre pressure of the newly fitted tyre as soon as possible.

– Have the tightening torque of the wheel bolts checked as soon as possible with a torque wrench. The prescribed torque is 120 Nm.

Note

- If you notice that the wheel bolts are corroded and difficult to turn when changing a wheel, they must be replaced before having the wheel bolt torque checked.
- In the interest of safety, drive at moderate speeds until the wheel bolt torque has been checked. ■

Wheel trims

The wheel trims must be removed to gain access to the wheel bolts.

Fig. 140 Changing the wheel: Removing a hub cap

Removing

– Insert the **extraction hook** from the tools in the corresponding hole ⇒ fig. 140.

– Pull off the **hub cap**. ■

Wheel covers*

The wheel covers must be removed for access to the wheel bolts

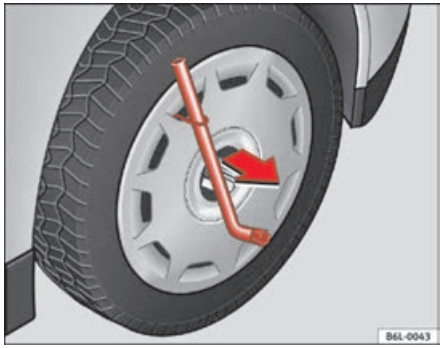

Fig. 141 Remove the complete hub cap

Removing

– Remove the wheel cover using the wire hook ⇒ fig. 141.

– Hook this into one of the cut-outs of the wheel cover.

Fitting

– Fit the wheel cover onto the wheel rim by pressing it firmly. Put pressure initially on the point of the cut out for the valve. Next fit the rest of the hubcap ■

Loosening the wheel bolts

The wheel bolts must be loosened before raising the vehicle.

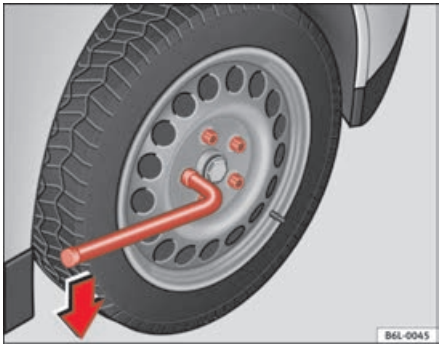

Fig. 142 Changing the wheel: loosen the wheel bolts

Loosening

– Fit the **box spanner** as far as it will go over the wheel bolt.

– Grasp the box spanner by the end turn it about one full turn to the **left** ⇒ fig. 142.

Tightening

– Fit the box spanner as far as it will go over the wheel bolt.

– Grasp the box spanner close to the end and turn the bolt to the right until it is secured.

– An adapter is required to unscrew or tighten the anti-theft wheel bolts. ▶

WARNING

Loosen the wheel bolts only about one turn before raising the vehicle with the jack, loosening the wheel bolts more than one turn can result in an accident.

Note

- Do not use the hexagonal socket in the screwdriver handle to loosen or tighten the wheel bolts.
- If the wheel bolt is very tight, you may be able to loosen it by pushing down the end of the spanner carefully with your foot. Hold on to the vehicle for support and take care not to slip. ■

Raising the vehicle

The vehicle must be raised with a jack to remove the wheel.

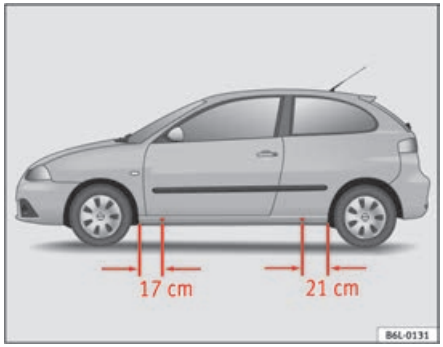

Fig. 143 The jacking points

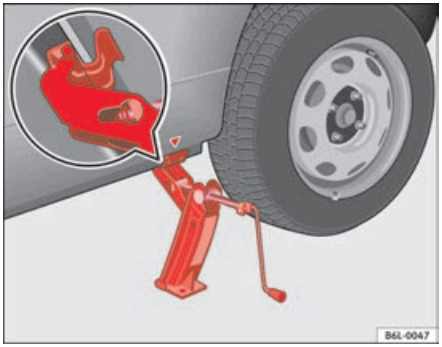

Fig. 144 Fitting the jack

– Locate the jacking point under the door sill closest to the wheel to be changed ⇒ fig. 143.

– Wind up the jack under the jacking point until the arm of the jack is directly below the vertical rib under the door sill.

– Align the jack so that the arm of the jack fits around the rib under the door sill and the movable base plate of the jack is flat on the ground ⇒ fig. 144.

– Raise the vehicle until the defective wheel is just clear of the ground.

Recesses at the front and rear of the door sills mark the jacking points ⇒ fig. 143. A position has been made for each wheel. Do not fit the jack anywhere else.

An **unstable surface** under the jack may cause the vehicle to slip off the jack. Therefore, the jack must be fitted on solid ground offering good support. Use ▶

a large and stable base, if necessary. On a hard, slippery surface (such as tiles) use a rubber mat or similar to prevent the jack from slipping.

WARNING

- **Take all precautions so that the base of the jack does not slip. Failure to do so could result in an accident.**
- **The vehicle can be damaged if the jack is not applied at the correct jacking points. There is also a risk of injury since the jack can slip off suddenly if it is not properly engaged.** ■

Removing and fitting the wheel

For removal and fitting the wheel, the following tasks must be completed.

Fig. 145 Changing the wheel: hexagonal socket in screwdriver handle to turn the wheel bolts after they have been loosened

Change the wheel as described below after loosening the wheel bolts and raising the vehicle with the jack.

Removing a wheel

– Unscrew the bolts using the **hexagonal tool** in the handle of the screwdriver (vehicle tool) and place them on a clean surface ⇒ fig. 145.

Fitting a wheel

– Screw in the wheel bolts and tighten them lightly using the hexagonal socket in the screwdriver handle.

The wheel bolts should be clean and turn easily. Before fitting the spare wheel, inspect the condition of the wheel and hub mounting surfaces. These surfaces must be clean before fitting the wheel.

The hexagonal socket in the screwdriver handle makes it easier to turn the wheel bolts when they are loose. The reversible screwdriver blade should be removed when the tool is used for this purpose.

If tyres with a specific direction of rotation are fitted, note the direction of rotation.

Note

Do not use the hexagonal socket in the screwdriver handle to loosen or tighten the wheel bolts. ■

Anti-theft wheel bolts*

A special adapter is required to turn the anti-theft wheel bolts.

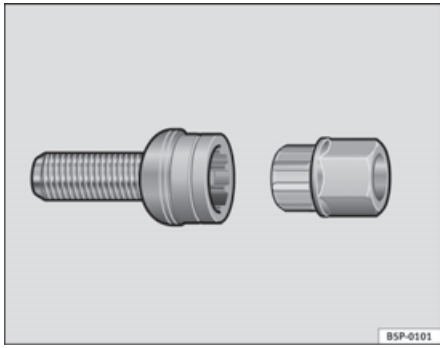

Fig. 146 Anti-theft wheel bolt

- Insert the adapter onto the wheel bolt and push it on as far as it will go ⇒ fig. 146.
- Fit the box spanner as far as it will go over the adapter.
- Loosen or tighten the wheel bolt as appropriate.

Code number

The code number of the anti-theft wheel bolt is stamped on the front of the adaptor.

The code number should be noted and kept in a safe place, as it is only by using the code number that a duplicate adaptor can be obtained from an Authorised Service Centre. ■

Tyres with directional tread pattern

Tyres with directional tread pattern must be fitted so that they rotate in the correct direction.

A directional tread pattern can be identified by arrows on the sidewall that point in the direction of rotation. Always note the direction of rotation indicated when fitting the wheel. This is important so that these tyres can give maximum grip and avoid excessive noise, tread wear and aquaplaning.

If, in an emergency, you have to fit the spare wheel so it rotates in the wrong direction, you must drive extremely carefully. The tyre will not give optimum performance. This is particularly important when driving on wet roads.

To benefit from the advantages of tyres with this type of tread pattern, the defective tyre should be replaced as soon as possible so that all tyres again rotate in the correct direction. ■

Tyre repair kit (Tyre-Mobility-System)*

General information and safety notes

Your vehicle is equipped with a tyre repair kit: the **Tyre Mobility System**.

In the event of a tyre puncture, **sealing compound** and an **air compressor** are located in the luggage compartment under the floor panel.

The Tyre Mobility System will reliably seal punctures caused by the penetration of a foreign body of up to about 4 mm in diameter.

It is not necessary to remove the foreign body from the tyre.

Instructions for the sealing compound are located on the sealing compound container. ▶

Notes for the proper use of the air compressor are included in an additional instruction leaflet.

WARNING

- **Do not attempt to repair a puncture with the sealing compound if the tyre has been damaged by driving the car after the tyre has lost its air.**
- **Always observe warnings and follow instructions concerning compressor and sealing compound carefully.**
- **Do not drive faster than 80 km/h, avoid heavy acceleration, hard braking and fast cornering.**
- **Tyres which have been repaired with sealing compound are only suitable for temporary use over a short period. Therefore, please drive carefully to the next available qualified workshop.**

For the sake of the environment

Used sealing compound containers should be disposed of at a proper facility.

Note

Seek professional assistance if the repair of a tyre puncture is not possible with the sealing compound. ■

Preparation work

Certain steps must be taken before repairing a tyre.

– If you have a flat tyre or puncture, park the vehicle as far away from the flow of traffic as possible.

– Apply the **handbrake** firmly.

– Engage **first gear**, or put the selector lever to position **P**.

– All passengers should **leave** the vehicle. They should wait in a safe area (for instance behind the roadside crash barrier).

– Check whether a repair is possible using the Tyre Mobility System “General information and safety notes.”

– Unscrew inflation cap from the affected wheel.

– Take the **tyre repair kit** out of the luggage compartment.

WARNING

Put the hazard warning lights on and place the warning triangle in position. This is for your own safety and also warns other road users.

Caution

Take special care if you have to repair a tyre on a gradient.

Note

Please observe legal requirements when doing so. ■

Tyre repair

The following sections describe the procedures for repairing a tyre.

Using the sealing compound

– The instructions on the container give detailed information on how to use the sealing compound. ▶

Inflating the tyre.

– Remove the air compressor and hose from the container.

– Screw the retaining nut onto the valve.

– Plug the compressor cable into a 12 volt socket.

– Turn on compressor and monitor the pressure shown on the pressure gauge.

Completing the repair

– Remove the compressor hose from the valve.

– Fit the valve cap.

– Unplug the compressor from the socket.

– Return all tools to their proper storing location.

Note

The compressor should never be allowed to run for longer than 6 minutes. ■

Fuses

Changing a fuse

If a fuse has blown it must be replaced

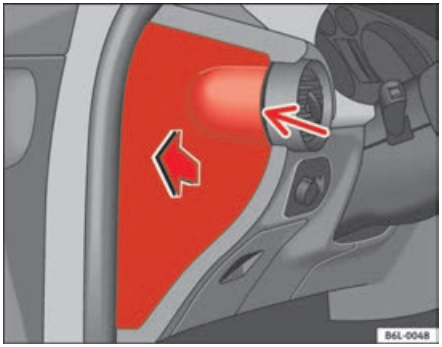

Fig. 147 Fuses in the dash panel

fuse cover

– Switch off the ignition and the component concerned.

– Identify the fuse for the failed component ⇒ page 213.

– Take the plastic clip from inside the fuse cover, fit it onto the blown fuse and pull the fuse out.

– Replace the blown fuse (which will have a melted metal strip) with a new fuse of the same ampere rating.

The individual electrical circuits are protected by fuses. The fuses are located behind a cover at the left-hand end of the dash panel. In versions with the ▶

steering wheel on the right the fuses are on the right-hand side of the instrument panel, behind a cover.

The electric windows are protected by **circuit breakers**. These reset automatically after a few seconds when the overload (caused for example by frozen windows) has been corrected.

Colour coding of fuses

Color	Amperes
Beige	5
Brown	7,5
red	10
blue	15
yellow	20
natural (white)	25
green	30

WARNING

Never “repair” damaged fuses and never replace them with fuses with a higher rating. Failure to comply could result in fire. This could also cause damage to other parts of the electrical system.

Note

- If a newly replaced fuse blows again after a short time, the electrical system must be checked by a qualified workshop as soon as possible.
- If you replace a fuse with a stronger fuse, you could cause damage to another location in the electrical system.
- Always keep some spare fuses in the vehicle. These are available from SEAT dealers. ■

Fuses on left side of dash panel

Fuses

Number	Electrical equipment	Amperes
1	Secondary water pump 1.8 20 VT (T16)	15
2	ABS/ESP	10
3	Vacant	
4	Brake light, clutch switch, relay coils	5
5	Engine control unit (petrol)	5
6	Right side light	5
7	Left side light	5
8	Mirror heating unit	5
9	Lambda probe	10
10	Signal “S”[a]. Radio unit	5
11	Electric mirror power supply	5
12	Headlamp height adjustment	5
13	Oil pressure/level sensor	5
14	Additional heating engine/fuel pump	10
15	Automatic gearbox unit	10
16	Heated seats	15
17	Engine control unit	5
18	Instrument panel /Heating and ventilation, Navigation, Headlamp height adjustment, Electric mirror	10
19	Reverse light	10
20	Windscreen washer pump	10
21	Main beam headlight, right	10

Number	Electrical equipment	Amperes
22	Main beam headlight, left	10
23	Number plate light/side light indicator	5
24	Rear windscreen wiper	10
25	Injectors(fuel)	10
26	Brake light switch /ESP (Turn sensor)	10
27	Instrument panel/Diagnosis	5
28	Switchboard: glovebox light, boot light, interior light	10
29	Climatronic	5
30	Power supply central locking unit	5
31	Left front window control	25
32	Vacant	
33	Self powered alarm horn	15
34	Engine control unit	15
35	Sunroof	20
36	Engine ventilator heating /blower	25
37	Headlight washer pump	20
38	Front and rear fog lights	15
39	Engine control unit (petrol)	15
40	Engine control unit diesel + SDI Fuel pump	30
41	Fuel gauge	15
42	Ignition transformer+ Engine control unit T70	15
43	Dipped headlight (right side)	15
44	Left rear window control	25
45	Front right window control	25

Number	Electrical equipment	Amperes
46	Windscreen wiper unit	20
47	Heated rear window unit	20
48	Indicator unit	15
49	Cigarette lighter	15
50	Locking unit	15
51	Radio/CD/GPS/Telephone	20
52	Horn	20
53	Dipped headlight (left side)	15
54	Right rear window control	25

a) The signal “S” is a system which includes the starter and steering lock and enables, after the ignition is switched off and without removing the key from the steering and starter lock, certain electrical components to be switched on, including for example, the radio, the courtesy light, etc. This function is deactivated on removing the key from the steering and starter lock.

Fuses below steering wheel in relay holder

PTC fuses

Number	Electrical equipment	Amperes
1	PTCs (Supplementary electrical heating using air)	40
2	PTCs (Supplementary electrical heating using air)	40
3	PTCs (Supplementary electrical heating using air)	40

Fuses in engine compartment above battery

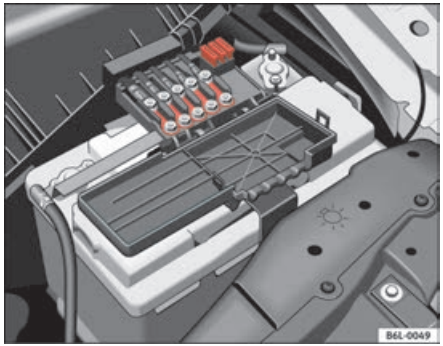

Fig. 148 Fuse box above battery

Metal fuses[8)]

8) These fuses may only be changed at an authorised Service Centre

Number	Electrical equipment	Amperes
1	Alternator/Starter motor	175
2	Power supply voltage distributor inside vehicle	110
3	Power assisted steering pump	50
4	Spark plug preheating (diesel)	50
5	Electric heater fan/air conditioning fan	40
6	ABS unit	40

Non-metal fuses

Number	Electrical equipment	Amperes
7	ABS unit	25
8	Electric heater fan/air conditioning fan	30
9	ABS unit	10

Number	Electrical equipment	Amperes
10	Cable control unit	5
11	Clima fan	5
12	Vacant	
13	Jatco unit for automatic gearbox	5
14	Vacant	
15	Vacant	
16	Vacant	

Some of the electrical items listed in the table are only fitted on certain models or are optional extras.

Please note that the above list, while correct at the time of printing, is subject to alterations. ■

Bulb change

General notes

Before changing any bulb first turn off the equipment concerned.

Do not touch the bulb glass. Fingerprints vaporise in the heat, causing a reduction in the bulb life and condensation on the mirror surface, thus reducing efficiency.

A bulb should only be replaced by one of the same type. The type is inscribed on the bulb, either on the glass part or on the base.

It is highly recommended to keep a box of spare bulbs in the vehicle. At the very least, the bulbs that most affect road safety should have spares in the vehicle.

Rear lights on frame

Brake/position 12V/P21/5W
Turn signals 12V/P21W

Rear lights on tailgate

Small position light 12V/W5W
Antifog lamp 12V/P21W
Reverse lamp 12V/P21W

Single reflector headlamps*

Full beam/dipped beam 12V 60/55W (H4)

Turn indicator 12V/PY 21W

Position lamp 12/W5W

Double reflector headlamps

Dipped beam 12V/55W (H7)
Full beam 12V/55W (H3)
Turn signals 12V/PY21W
Position lights 12V/W5W

Xenon headlights[9)]

Dipped beam 12V/35W (D1S) [10)]

Full beam 12V/55W (H7)

Turn signals 12V/PY21W

Position lights 12V/W5W

Fog lights*

Fog lights 12V/55W (H3)

Registration plate light

Registration plate light - C5W

Caution

- The halogen lamps (H3, H7...) are pressurised and might explode on changing them.
- Therefore protective gloves and glasses should be worn when changing a halogen lamp.

Note

- Due to the difficulty in accessing the lamps, any replacement work should be done by a SEAT dealer. However, we shall explain how to change these lamps, except for the xenon lights*. ■

9) On this type of headlight, the bulb changes must be made by the SEAT dealer, given that complex elements must be removed from the vehicle and a reset must be made on the automatic control system incorporated.

10) The Xenon bulbs discharge 2.5 times the light flux and have an average lifespan of 5 times more than that of halogen bulbs, this means that, except due to unusual circumstances, there is no need to change the bulbs for the whole life of the vehicle.

Main headlight lamps

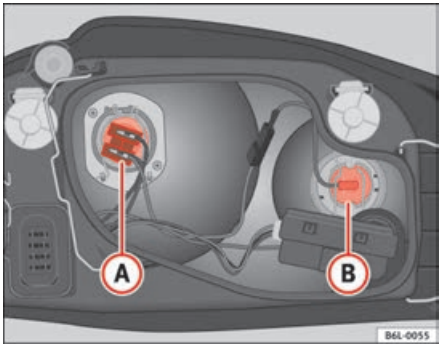

Fig. 149 Main headlight lamps

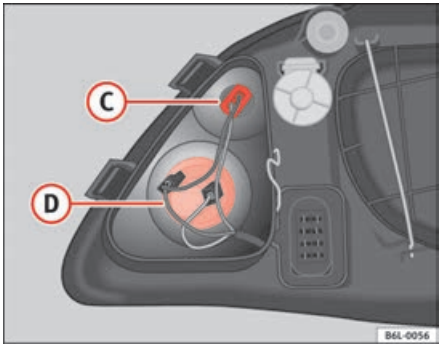

Fig. 150 Main headlight lamps

(A) Dipped headlights

(B) Main beam headlights ▶

(C) Side lights
(D) Indicator lights ■

Dipped headlight lamp

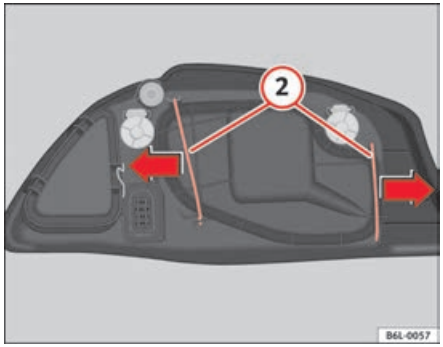

Fig. 151 Dipped headlight lamp

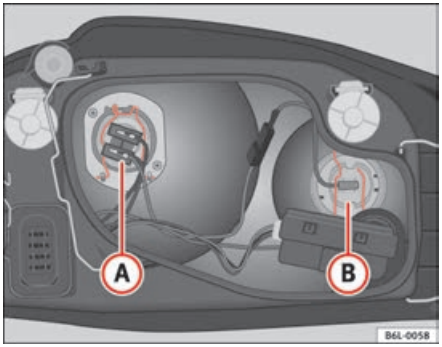

Fig. 152 Dipped headlight lamp

– Raise the bonnet.

– Remove the loops (2) ⇒ fig. 151 outwards in the direction of the arrow and remove the cover.

– Remove the lamp cable connector (A) ⇒ fig. 152.

– Undo the retainer spring and remove.

– Remove the lamp and fit the new lamp in the same position, making sure it sits correctly.

– Press the retaining spring on the lamp base and clip on.

– Plug in the connector.

– Fit the plastic cover and replace the loops (2) ⇒ fig. 151.

– Check the headlight adjustment ■

Main beam lights

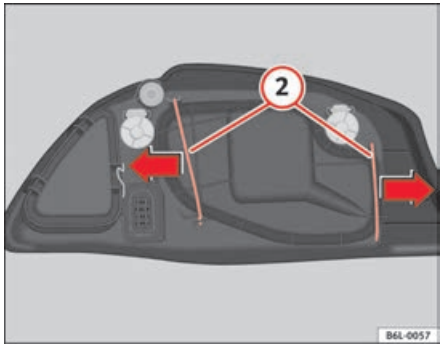

Fig. 153 Main beam lamp

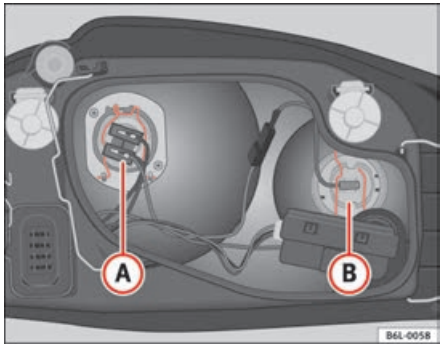

Fig. 154 Main beam lamp

– Raise the bonnet.

– Remove the loops (2) ⇒ fig. 153 outwards in the direction of the arrow and remove the cover.

– Remove the lamp cable connector (B) ⇒ fig. 154.

– Undo the retainer spring and remove.

– Remove the lamp and fit the new lamp in the same position, making sure it sits correctly.

– Press the retaining spring on the lamp base and clip on.

– Plug in the connection cable.

– Fit the plastic cover and replace the loops (2) ⇒ fig. 153.

– Check the headlight adjustment. ■

Side beam lights

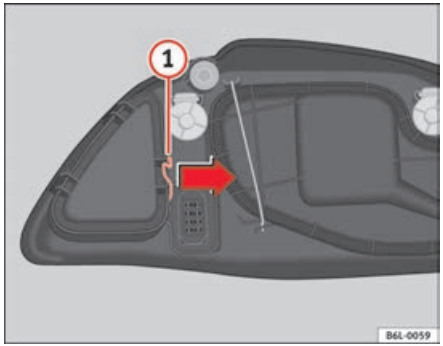

Fig. 155 Side lights

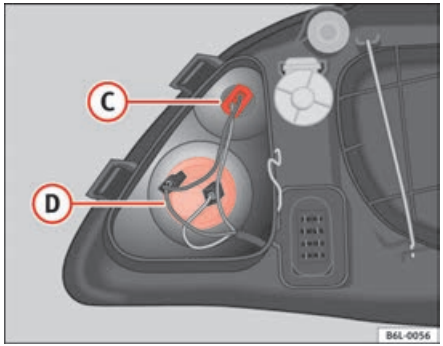

Fig. 156 Side lights

– Raise the bonnet.

– Remove the loops (1) ⇒ fig. 155 in the direction of the arrow and remove the cover.

– Pull on the cables to release the lamp holder from the casing (C) ⇒ fig. 156.

– Pull on the lamp and replace.

– To assemble proceed in reverse order.

– Fit the plastic cover and secure the loop. ■

Turn indicator lamps

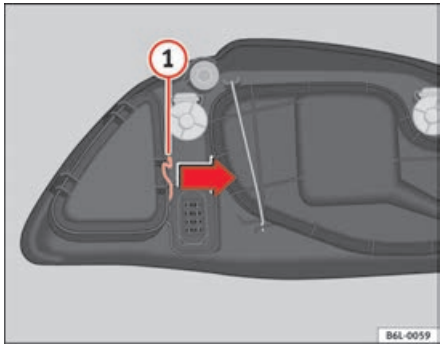

Fig. 157 Indicator lights

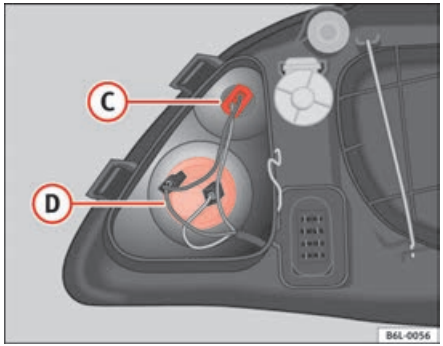

Fig. 158 Indicator lights

– Raise the bonnet.

– Remove the loops (1) ⇒ fig. 157 in the direction of the arrow and remove the cover.

– Turn the lamp holder to the left and remove it from the casing ⇒ fig. 158 (D).

– Installation is done in the reverse order.

– Fit the plastic cover and secure the loop. ■

Fog lights

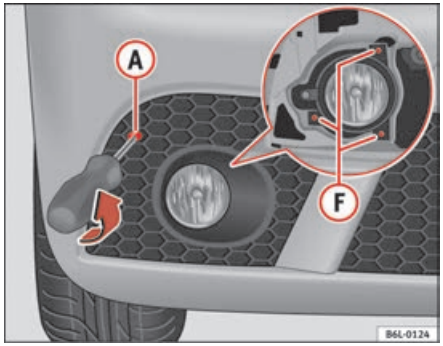

Fig. 159 Fog lights

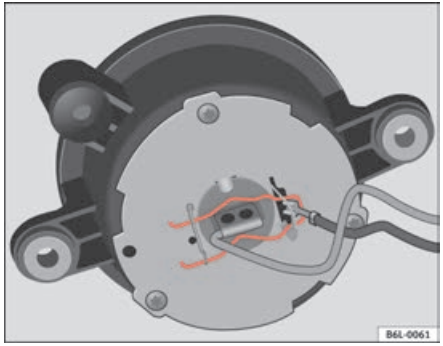

Fig. 160 Fog lights

– Remove the grille, taking out the bolt (A) ⇒ fig. 159, carefully pull the grille on the side of the screw and release the cover.

– Undo the two fastening bolts (F) ⇒ fig. 159 and when released unplug the connector.

– Release the headlight cover.

– Unplug the lamp cable.

– Undo the lamp retainer spring and remove.

– Remove the lamp and fit the new lamp in the same position, making sure it sits correctly.

– Press the retaining spring on the lamp base and clip on.

– Plug in the lamp cable.

– The assembly of the cover and the headlamp is carried out in reverse order. ■

Side indicator lamps

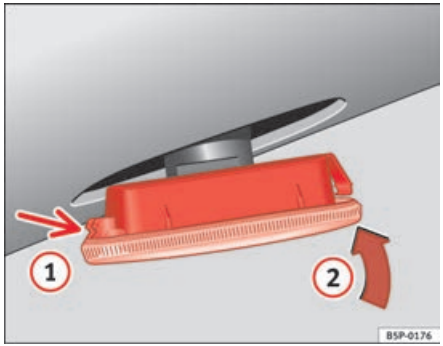

Fig. 161 Side indicators

- Press the indicator to the left or to the right to remove the lamp.
- Remove the lamp holder from the indicator.
- Remove the failed bulb and replace with a new bulb.
- Insert the lamp holder in the indicator guide until it clicks into place.
- First fit the indicator in the opening in the chassis, fastening the tabs (1) ⇒ fig. 161, and then fit in the lamp as shown by the arrow (2) ⇒ fig. 161. ■

Rear light on tailgate: Accessing the rear light

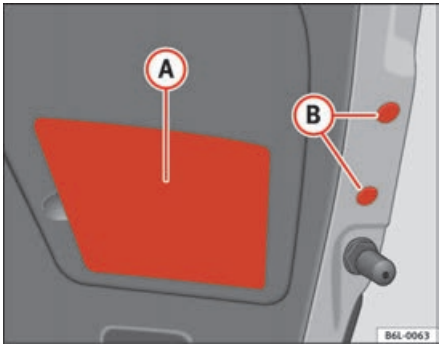

Fig. 162 Rear light on tailgate

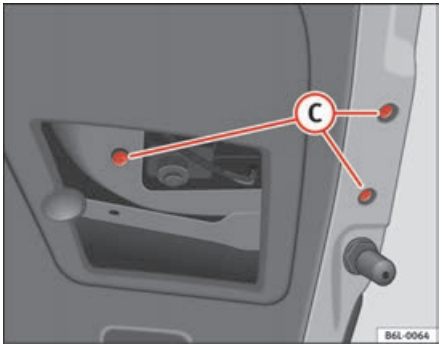

Fig. 163 Rear light on tailgate

Side light 1/ Fog light/ reverse light

- Open the tailgate.

– Remove the plastic cover (A) ⇒ page 224, fig. 162 and the plastic caps (B) ⇒ page 224, fig. 162 carefully levering with the flat part of a screwdriver and taking special care not to scratch the paintwork.

– Extract the bolts (C) ⇒ page 224, fig. 163 and disconnect the connector.

– Remove the rear light from its housing. ■

Rear light on tailgate: Accessing the bulb

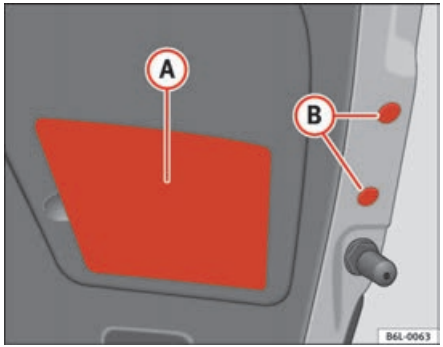

Fig. 164 Rear light on tailgate

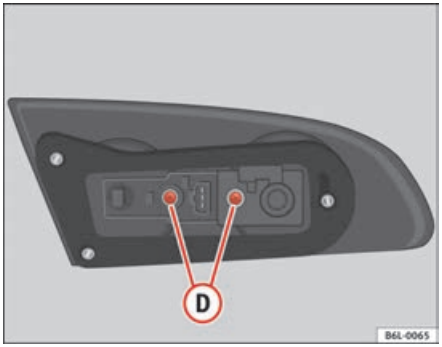

Fig. 165 Access to the lamp

Side light 1/ Fog light/ reverse light

– Unscrew the bolts (D) ⇒ fig. 165 and take the lamp holder out.

– Press and rotate the large lamp holder to the left. For the small lamp, rotate and extract the lamp holder and pull on the lamp.

– Remove lamp and replace.

– Fit the lamp holder and fit.

– Fit the caps (B) and the plastic cover (A) ⇒ fig. 164.

Note

Ensure that all of the joints, sealing components and the plastic caps (B) are correctly fitted. ■

Rear lights on frame

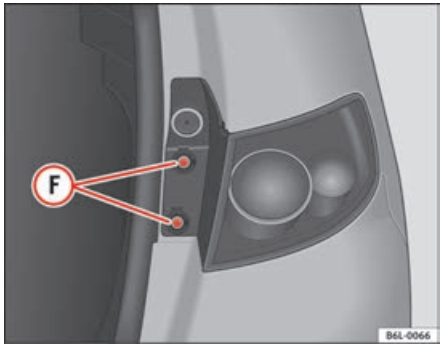

Fig. 166 Rear lights on bodywork

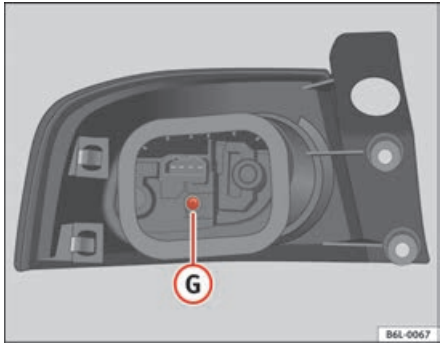

Fig. 167 Rear lights on bodywork

Side light 2/ Brake light/ Indicator light

– Open the tailgate.

– Unscrew the screws (F) ⇒ fig. 166 using a flat-blade screwdriver.

– Move the rear light outwards and pull.

– If necessary, unplug the connector.

– Unscrew the bolt (G) ⇒ fig. 167.

– Take out the lamp holder.

– Press and rotate the lamps to the left.

– Remove faulty lamp and replace it.

– Proceed in the reverse order, pressing gently on the outer edge of the rear light (in the area of the metal clips).

Note

Make sure that when assembling all seals and rubbers are correctly fitted. ■

Number plate light

– Release transparent lamp cover by levering the tab with the flat part of a screwdriver.

– Remove the defective lamp from the lamp holder, holding it in the centre, press to one side and fit new lamp

– Fit lamp cover in its space, taking special care when replacing the rubber seal and press until it clicks into place. ■

Interior light and front reading light

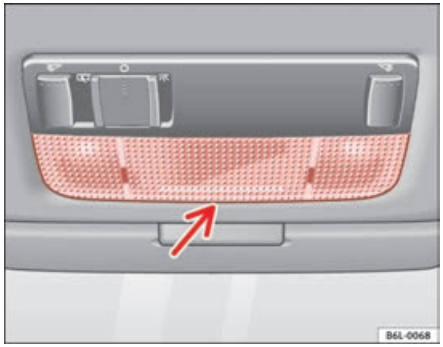

Fig. 168 Front reading light

To remove glass

– Insert a fine screwdriver between the casing and the glass ⇒ fig. 168.

– Carefully remove the glass, levering it to avoid possible damage.

To replace the lamps

– Pull the lamps outwards.

– To remove the central lamp, hold and press to one side.

Assembly

– Proceed in the reverse order, pressing gently on the outer edge of the side light.

– First fit the glass with the fastening tabs over the frame of the switch. Next press the front part until the two long tabs click on the support. ■

Additional brake lights*

Given the difficulty involved in the replacement of this light it should be done by the Technical Service. ■

Glove box light*

– Insert screwdriver above, between the light and the glove box.

– Carefully remove the light Next lift the light out sideways.

– Replace the bulb.

– Insert the light on the connector side, first underneath then push at the top until it clicks into place. ■

Boot light*

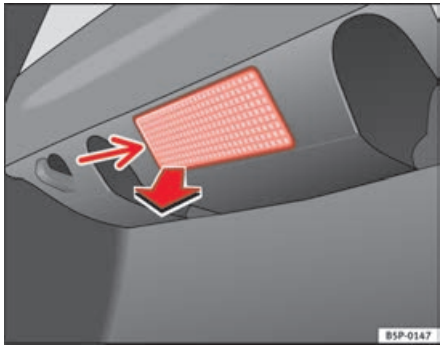

Fig. 169 Luggage compartment light

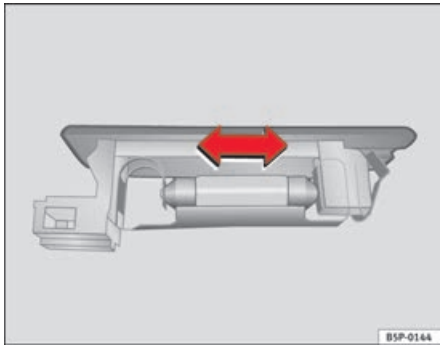

Fig. 170 Luggage compartment light

– Extract the tulip shaped fitting by pressing on the inside edge of this -arrow- using the flat side of a screwdriver ⇒ fig. 169.

– Press the lamp sideways and remove it from its housing ⇒ fig. 170. ■

Jump-starting

Jump leads

The jump lead must have a sufficient wire cross section.

If the engine fails to start because of a discharged battery, the battery can be connected to the battery of another vehicle to start the engine.

Jump leads

Jump leads must comply with the standard **DIN 72553** (see manufacturer's documentation). The wire cross section must be at least 25 mm^2 for petrol engines and at least 35 mm^2 for diesel engines.

Note

- The vehicles must not touch each other, otherwise electricity could flow as soon as the positive terminals are connected.
- The discharged battery must be properly connected to the vehicles electrical system. ■

How to jump start: description

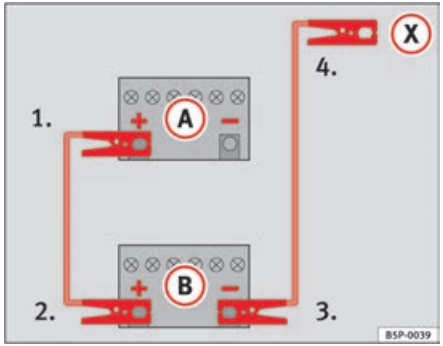

Fig. 171 How to connect the jump leads

In ⇒ fig. 171, the flat battery is (A) and the charged battery (B).

Jump lead terminal connections

– Switch off the ignition on both vehicles ⇒ ⚠.

1. Connect one end of the red jump lead to the positive ⇒ fig. 171 (+) terminal of the vehicle with the flat battery ⇒ ⚠.
2. Connect the other end of the red jump lead to the positive terminal (+) in the vehicle providing assistance.
3. Connect one end of the black jump lead to the negative terminal (-) on the battery of the vehicle providing assistance.
4. Connect the other end of the black jump lead (X) to a solid metal component which is bolted on to the engine block, or onto the engine block itself of the vehicle with the flat battery. Do not connect it to a point near the battery ⇒ ⚠.
5. Position the leads in such a way that they cannot come into contact with any moving parts in the engine compartment.

Starting

6. Start the engine of the vehicle with the boosting battery and let it run at idling speed.
7. Start the engine of the car with the flat battery and wait one or two minutes until the engine is “running”.

Removing the jump leads

8. Before you remove the jump leads, switch off the headlights (if they are switched on).
9. Turn on the heater blower and rear window heater in the vehicle with the flat battery. This helps minimise voltage peaks that are generated when the leads are disconnected.
10. When the engine is running, disconnect the leads in reverse order to the details given above.

Connect the battery clamps so they have good metal-to-metal contact with the battery terminals.

If the engine fails to start, switch off the starter after about 10 seconds and try again after about half a minute.

WARNING

- **Please note the safety warnings referring to working in the engine compartment ⇒ page 179, “Working in the engine compartment”.**
- **The battery providing assistance must have the same voltage as the flat battery (12V) and approximately the same capacity (see imprint on battery). Failure to comply could result in an explosion.**
- **Never use jump leads when one of the batteries is frozen. Danger of explosion! Even after the battery has thawed, battery acid could leak and cause chemical burns. If a battery freezes, it should be replaced.**
- **Keep sparks, flames and lighted cigarettes away from batteries, danger of explosion. Failure to comply could result in an explosion.**
- **Observe the instructions provided by the manufacturer of the jump leads.**
- **Do not connect the negative cable from the other vehicle directly to the negative terminal of the flat battery. The gas emitted from the battery could be ignited by sparks. Danger of explosion.**
- **Do not attach the negative cable from the other vehicle to parts of the fuel system or to the brake line.**
- **The non-insulated parts of the battery clamps must not be allowed to touch. The jump lead attached to the positive battery terminal must not touch metal parts of the vehicle, this can cause a short circuit.**
- **Position the leads in such a way that they cannot come into contact with any moving parts in the engine compartment.**
- **Do not bend over the batteries. This could result in chemical burns.**

Note

The vehicles must not touch each other, otherwise electricity could flow as soon as the positive terminals are connected. ■

Towing and tow-starting

Tow-starting*

The use of jump leads is preferable to tow-starting.

We recommend that you do **not** tow-start your vehicle. Jump-starting is preferable ⇒ page 228.

However, if your vehicle has to be tow-started:

– Engage the 2nd or the 3rd gear.

– Keep the clutch pressed down.

– Switch on the ignition.

– Once both vehicles are moving, release the clutch.

– As soon as the engine starts, press the clutch and move the gear lever into neutral. This helps to prevent driving into the towing vehicle.

WARNING

The risk of accidents is high when tow-starting. The vehicle being towed can easily collide with the towing vehicle.

Caution

When tow-starting, fuel could enter the catalytic converter and damage it. ■

Towing eyes

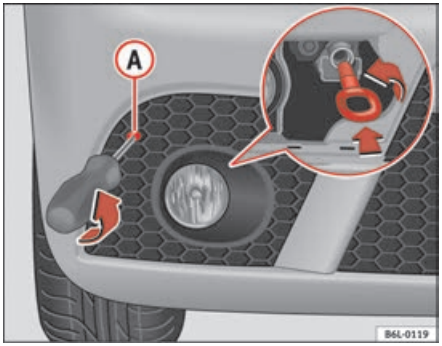

Fig. 172 Towing eye at the front of the vehicle

Please observe the following points if you use a tow-rope:

Notes for the driver of the towing vehicle

– Drive slowly at first until the tow-rope is taut. Then accelerate gradually.

– Begin and change gears cautiously. If you are driving an automatic vehicle, accelerate gently.

– Remember that the brake servo and power steering are not working in the vehicle you are towing. Brake earlier than you would normally, but with a more gentle pressure on the brake.

Notes for the driver of the towed vehicle

– Ensure that the tow-rope remains taut at all times when towing. ▶

Fitting the front towing eye

– First remove the right hand cover from the lower part of the bumper.

– Remove the bolt (A) ⇒ page 231, fig. 172.

– Take the towing ring from the onboard tools.

– Rotate the towing ring to the left until it is completely tightened into position.

– To remove the ring, rotate it to the right.

Tow-rope or tow-bar

It is easier and safer to tow a vehicle with a tow-bar. You should only use a tow-rope if you do not have a tow-bar.

A tow-rope should be slightly elastic to reduce the loading on both vehicles. It is advisable to use a tow-rope made of synthetic fibre or similarly elastic material.

Attach the tow-rope or the tow-bar only to the towing eyes provided or a towing bracket.

Driving style

Towing requires some experience, especially when using a tow-rope. Both drivers should be familiar with the technique required for towing. Inexperienced drivers should not attempt to tow-start or tow away another vehicle.

Do not pull too hard with the towing vehicle and take care to avoid jerking the tow-rope. When towing on an unpaved road, there is always a risk of overloading and damaging the anchorage points.

The ignition of the vehicle being towed must be switched on to prevent the steering wheel from locking and also to allow the use of the turn signals, horn, windscreen wipers and washers.

As the brake servo does not work if the engine is not running, you must apply considerably more pressure to the brake pedal than you normally would.

As the power assisted steering does not work if the engine is not running, you will need more strength to steer than you normally would.

Towing vehicles with an automatic gearbox

- Put the selector lever into position “N”.
- Do not drive faster than 50 km/h when towing a vehicle.
- Do not tow further than 50 km.
- If a breakdown vehicle is used, the vehicle must be towed with the front wheels raised.

Note

- Observe legal requirements when towing or tow-starting.
- Switch on the hazard warning lights of both vehicles. However, observe any regulations to the contrary.
- For technical reasons, vehicles with an automatic gearbox must not be tow-started.
- If damage to your vehicle means that there is no lubricant in the gearbox, you must raise the drive wheels while the vehicle is being towed.
- If the vehicle has to be towed more than 50 km, the front wheels must be raised during towing, and towing should be carried out by a qualified person.
- The steering wheel is locked when the vehicle has no electrical power. The vehicle must then be towed with the front wheels raised. Towing should be carried out by a qualified person.
- The towing eye should always be kept in the vehicle. Please refer to the notes on ⇒ page 231. ■

Front towing eye - Cupra Version

To tow the vehicle from the front, remove the cover on the central lower grille.

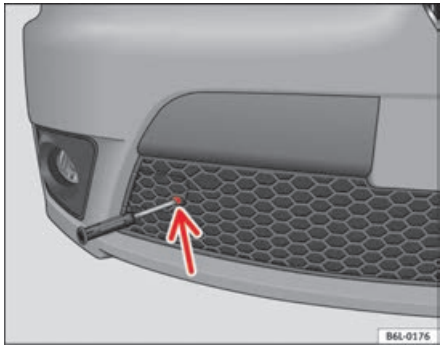

Fig. 173 Eye cover on the central lower grille

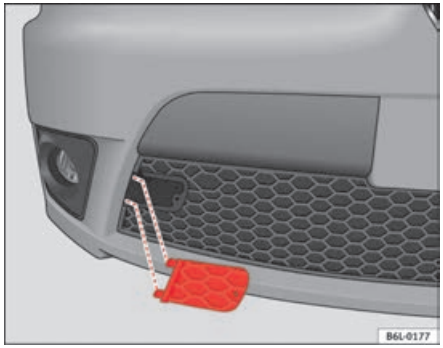

Fig. 174 Eye cover on the central lower grille

Remove the cover

– First remove the fastener that secures it, with the screwdriver supplied ⇒ fig. 173.

– Remove the cover by releasing the two side tabs at the same time ⇒ fig. 174. ■

Fitting the towing eye

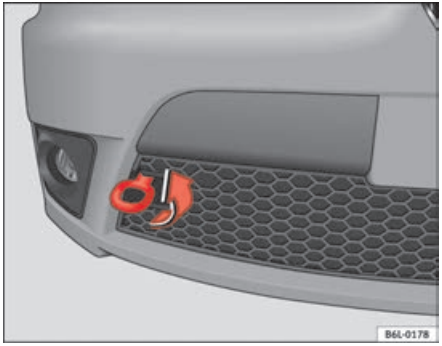

Fig. 175 Towing eye at the front of the vehicle

– Screw in the towing eye that is in the vehicle tool box*, turning it **to the left** until it is perfectly screwed in ⇒ fig. 175.

– To remove the eye, turn it to the right until it comes out, and place it in its housing, inside the vehicle tool box*.

– To position the cover, click the two side tabs on and bring the cover into position. ▶

Note

Always carry the eye in the vehicle, as it is specific to this model. ■

Rear towline anchorage

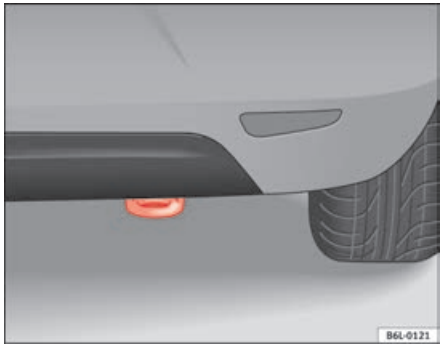

Fig. 176 Rear towing ring

At the rear, on the right below the rear bumper is a towline point. ■

Technical Data

General notes on the technical data

What you should be aware of

General notes

All data in the official vehicle documents take precedence over this data.

All data in these documents are valid for the basic model as offered in Spain. The vehicle data card included in the Maintenance Programme or the vehicle registration documents shows which engine is installed in the vehicle.

The figures may be different if additional equipment is fitted, for different models, for special vehicles and for other countries.

Abbreviations used in this paragraph of the Technical Data

Abbreviation	Meaning
kW	Kilowatt, engine power measurement.
bhp	Brake horse power, formerly used to denote engine power
at rpm	Revolutions per minute - engine speed.
Nm	Newton metres, unit of engine torque.
l/100 km	Fuel consumption in litres per 100 kilometres
g/km	Carbon dioxide emissions in grams per kilometre.
CO_2	Carbon dioxide
CN	Cetane number, indication of the ignition quality of the diesel.
RON	Research octane number, indication of the knock resistance of petrol.

Vehicle identification data

The most important data are given on the type plate and the vehicle data sticker.

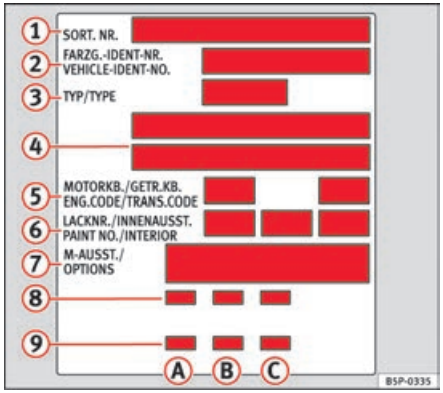

Fig. 177 Vehicle data sticker – luggage compartment

Vehicles for certain export countries do not have a type plate.

Type plate

The type plate is located on the left rib inside the engine compartment.

Vehicle identification number

The vehicle identification number (chassis number) can be read from outside the vehicle through a viewer in the windscreen. This is located on the left-hand side of the vehicle in the lower area of the windscreen. It is also located on the right hand side of the engine compartment.

Vehicle data

The data sticker is placed on the inside of the spare wheel recess in the luggage compartment.

The following information can be found in the vehicle information: ⇒ fig. 177

This information also figures in the Maintenance Program.

1. Production control number
2. Vehicle identification number (chassis number)
3. Model code number
4. Model designation / engine power output
5. Engine and gearbox code letters
6. Paint number / interior trim code
7. Optional equipment codes
8. Consumption values
9. CO_2 emissions values

The data of 2 to 9 also figure in the Maintenance Program.

Consumption and CO_2 values

- A Consumption (litres/100 km) / CO_2 emissions (g/km) urban
- B Consumption (litres/100 km) / CO_2 emissions (g/km) motorway
- C Consumption (litres/100 km) / CO_2 emissions (g/km) combination

How are the figures measured?

Fuel consumption

The weight, consumption and emission details shown on the vehicle data sticker differ from one vehicle to another.

The fuel consumption and CO_2 emissions of the vehicle can be found in the vehicle information.

The fuel consumption and emissions figures given are based on the weight category of the car, which is determined according to the engine/gearbox combination and the equipment fitted.

The consumption figures are calculated in accordance with the EC fuel consumption test requirements 1999/100/EC. These test requirements specify a realistic test method based on normal everyday driving.

These are taken based on the following test conditions:

Urban cycle	The urban cycle starts with an engine cold start. City driving is then simulated.
Extra urban cycle	In the extra urban cycle the vehicle undergoes frequent acceleration and braking in all gears, as in normal everyday driving. The road speed ranges from 0 to 120 km/h.
Combined	The average overall consumption is calculated with a weighting of around 37% for the urban cycle and 63% for the extra urban cycle.
CO_2 emissions	The exhaust gases are collected during both driving cycles to calculate carbon dioxide emissions. The gas composition is then analysed to evaluate the CO_2 content and other emissions.

Note

- Actual consumption may vary from quoted test values, depending on personal driving style, road and traffic conditions, the weather and the condition of the vehicle. ■

Weights

Kerb weight refers to the basic model with a fuel tank filled to 90% capacity and without optional extras. The figure quoted includes 75 kg to allow for the weight of the driver.

For special versions and optional equipment fittings or for the addition of accessories, the weight of the vehicle will increase ⇒ ⚠.

WARNING

- **Please note that the centre of gravity may shift when transporting heavy objects; this may affect the vehicle's handling and lead to an accident. Always adjust your speed and driving style to suit road conditions and requirements.**
- **Never exceed the gross axle weight rating or the gross vehicle weight rating. If the allowed axle load or the allowed total weight is exceeded, the driving characteristics of the vehicle may change, leading to accidents, injuries and damage to the vehicle.** ■

Towing a trailer

Trailer weights

Trailer weights

The trailer weights and drawbar loads approved are selected in intensive trials according to precisely defined criteria. The approved trailer weights are valid for vehicles in the *EU* for maximum speeds of 80 km/h (in certain circumstances up to 100 km/h). The figures may be different in other countries. All data in the official vehicle documents take precedence over these data ⇒ ⚠.

Drawbar load

The *maximum* permitted weight exerted by the trailer drawbar on the ball joint of the towing bracket must not exceed **75 kg**.

In the interest of road safety, we recommend that you always tow approaching the maximum drawbar load. The response of the trailer on the road will be poor if the drawbar load is too small.

If the maximum permissible drawbar load cannot be met (e.g. with small, empty and light-weight single axle trailers or tandem axle trailers with an axle base of less than 1 metre), at least 4% of the actual trailer weight is a legal stipulation for a drawbar load.

WARNING

- **For safety reasons, you should not drive at speeds above 80 km/h when towing a trailer. This also applies to countries where higher speeds are permitted.**
- **Never exceed the maximum trailer weights or the draw bar loading. If the permissible axle load or the permissible total weight is exceeded, the driving characteristics of the vehicle may change, leading to accidents, injuries and damage to the vehicle.** ■

Wheels

Tyre pressure, snow chains, wheel bolts

Tyre pressures

The sticker with the tyre pressure values can be found on the inside of the tank flap. The tyre pressure values given there are for *cold* tyres. The slightly raised pressures of warm tyres must not be reduced ⇒ ⚠. ▶

Snow chains

Snow chains are only permitted on the front wheels and only for tyres 155/80 R13; 165/70 R14 and 185/80 R14. Snow chains must have fine-pitch links which do not protrude more than 15 mm, including tension device.

Remaining tyres can be fitted with chains no thicker than 9 mm.

Wheel bolts

After the wheels have been changed, the **tightening torque** of the wheel bolts should be checked as soon as possible with a torque wrench ⇒ ⚠. The tightening torque for steel and alloy wheels is **120** Nm.

WARNING

- **Check the tyre pressure at least once per month. Correct tyre pressure is very important. If the tyre pressure is too high or too low, there is an increased danger of accidents, particularly at high speeds.**
- **If the torque of the wheel bolts is too low, they could loosen whilst the vehicle is in motion. Risk of accident! If the tightening torque is too high, the wheel bolts and threads could be damaged.**

Note

We recommend that you ask your Authorised Service Centre for information about appropriate wheel, tyre and snow chain size. ■

Technical Data

Checking fluid levels

From time to time, the levels of the different fluids in the vehicle must be checked. Never fill with incorrect fluids, to do so may cause serious damage to the engine.

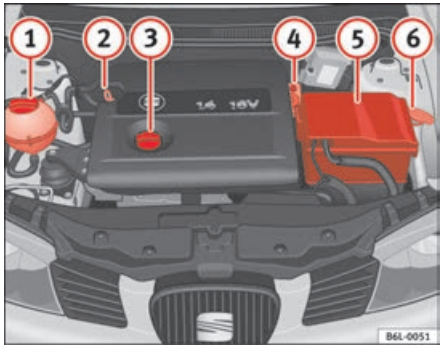

Fig. 178 Diagram for the location of the various elements

1. Radiator expansion tank
2. Engine oil dipstick.
3. Engine oil filler cap
4. Brake fluid reservoir
5. Battery
6. Windscreen washer fluid container

The checking and replenishment of the service fluids are carried out on the components mentioned above. These operations are described in the ⇒ page 179.

Overview

Further explanations, instructions and restrictions on the technical data are contained as of ⇒ page 235.

Note

The layout of parts may vary according to engine. ■

Petrol engine 1.2 44 kW (60 bhp)

General engine data

Power output in kW (bhp)	rpm	44 (60)/ 5200
Maximum torque	in Nm at rpm	108/ 3000
No. of cylinders, capacity	in cm ^{3}	3/ 1198
Compression		10,5 +/- 0,3
Fuel		Super 95 RON[a)] /Normal 91 RON[b)]

a) **R**esearch-**O**ctane-**N**umber = Measure of the predetonation power of the petrol.
b) With a slight power loss

Performance figures

Maximum speed	in km/h	159
Acceleration from 0-80 km/h	in sec.	10,8
Acceleration from 0-100 km/h	in sec.	17,2

Weights

		3 doors	5 doors
Gross vehicle weight	in kg	1537	1560
Weight in working order (with driver)	in kg	1102	1127
Gross axle weight, front	in kg	809	814
Gross axle weight, rear	in kg	778	800
Permitted roof load	in kg	75	75

Trailer weights

With no brakes, gradients up to 12%	500
With brakes, gradients up to 12%	800

Engine oil capacity

Approximate engine oil capacity with oil filter change	2.8 litres

Petrol engine 1.2 litre 51 kW (69 bhp)

General engine data

Power output in kW (bhp)	rpm	51 (69)/ 5400
Maximum torque	in Nm at rpm	112/ 3000
No. of cylinders, capacity	in cm^3	3/ 1198
Compression		10,5 +/- 0,3
Fuel		Super 95 RON[a)]/Normal 91 RON[b)]

a) **R**esearch-**O**ctane-**N**umber = Measure of the anti-detonation capacity of the petrol.
b) With a slight power loss

Performance figures

Maximum speed	in km/h	170
Acceleration from 0-49.71 mi/h	in sec.	9,3
Acceleration from 0-100 km/h	in sec.	14,2

Weights

		3 doors	5 doors
Gross vehicle weight	in kg	1537	1560
Weight in working order (with driver)	in kg	1102	1127
Gross axle weight, front	in kg	809	814
Gross axle weight, rear	in kg	778	800
Permitted roof load	in kg	75	75

Trailer weights

With no brakes, gradients up to 12%	500
With brakes, gradients up to 12%	800

Engine oil capacity

Approximate engine oil capacity with oil filter change	3,2 litres

Petrol engine 1.4 litre 63 kW (86 bhp)

General engine data

Power output in kW (bhp)	rpm	63 (86)/ 5000
Maximum torque	in Nm at rpm	132/ 3800
No. of cylinders, capacity	in cm^3	4/ 1390
Compression		10,5 +/- 0,3
Fuel		Super 95 RON[a)]/Normal 91 RON[b)]

a) **R**esearch-**O**ctane-**N**umber = Measure of the predetonation power of the petrol.
b) Slight power loss

Performance figures

Maximum speed	in km/h	180
Acceleration from 0-49.71 mi/h	in sec.	8,1
Acceleration from 0-100 km/h	in sec.	11,9

Weights

		3 doors	5 doors
Gross vehicle weight	in kg	1542	1567
Weight in working order (with driver)	in kg	1103	1128
Gross axle weight, front	in kg	815	820
Gross axle weight, rear	in kg	775	795
Permitted roof load	in kg	75	75

Trailer weights

With no brakes, gradients up to 12%	600
With brakes, gradients up to 12%	1000

Engine oil capacity

Approximate engine oil capacity with oil filter change	3,2 litres

Petrol engine 1.4 litre 55 kW (75 hp). Automatic

General engine data

Power output in kW (bhp)	rpm	55 (75)/ 5000
Maximum torque	in Nm at rpm	126/ 3800
No. of cylinders, capacity	in cm ^{3}	4/ 1390
Compression		10,5
Fuel		Super 95 RON[a)]/Normal 91 RON[b)]

a) **R**esearch-**O**ctane-**N**umber = Measure of the predetonation power of the petrol.
b) Slight power loss

Performance figures

Maximum speed	in km/h	169
Acceleration from 0-49.71 mi/h	in sec.	10,1
Acceleration from 0-100 km/h	in sec.	15,6

Weights

		3 doors	5 doors
Gross vehicle weight	in kg	1562	1589
Weight in working order (with driver)	in kg	1142	1169
Gross axle weight, front	in kg	855	860
Gross axle weight, rear	in kg	770	795
Permitted roof load	in kg	75	75

Trailer weights

With no brakes, gradients up to 12%	500
With brakes, gradients up to 12%	800

Engine oil capacity

Approximate engine oil capacity with oil filter change	3,5 litres

Petrol engine 1.4 litre 74 kW (100 bhp)

General engine data

Power output in kW (bhp)	rpm	74 (100)/ 6000
Maximum torque	in Nm at rpm	126/ 4400
No. of cylinders, capacity	in cm^3	4/ 1390
Compression		10,5
Fuel		Super 98 RON[a)]/Super 95 RON[b)]

a) **R**esearch-**O**ctane-**N**umber = Measure of the predetonation power of the petrol.
b) Slight power loss

Performance figures

Maximum speed	in km/h	190
Acceleration from 0-49.71 mi/h	in sec.	7,3
Acceleration from 0-100 km/h	in sec.	11,2

Weights

		3 doors	5 doors
Gross vehicle weight	in kg	1543	1568
Weight in working order (with driver)	in kg	1104	1129
Gross axle weight, front	in kg	814	820
Gross axle weight, rear	in kg	778	798
Permitted roof load	in kg	75	75

Trailer weights

With no brakes, gradients up to 12%	500
With brakes, gradients up to 12%	1000

Engine oil capacity

Approximate engine oil capacity with oil filter change	3,5 litres

Petrol engine 1.6l 77 kW (105 bhp)

General engine data

Power output in kW (bhp)	rpm	77 (105)/5 600
Maximum torque	in Nm at rpm	153/ 3800
No. of cylinders, capacity	in cm^3	4/ 1598
Compression		10,5+/- 0,2
Fuel		95 super RON[a)]

a) **R**esearch-**O**ctane-**N**umber = Measure of the predetonation power of the petrol.

Performance figures

Maximum speed	in km/h	192
Acceleration from 0-80 km/h	in sec.	7,2
Acceleration from 0-100 km/h	in sec.	11,0

Weights

		3 doors	5 doors
Gross vehicle weight	in kg	1564	1589
Weight in working order (with driver)	in kg	1144	1169
Gross axle weight, front	in kg	825	830
Gross axle weight, rear	in kg	783	800
Permitted roof load	in kg	75	75

Trailer weights

With no brakes, gradients up to 12%	550
With brakes, gradients up to 12%	1000

Engine oil capacity

Approximate engine oil capacity with oil filter change	4.0 litres

Petrol engine 1.8l 110 kW (150 bhp)

General engine data

Power output in kW (bhp)	rpm	110 (150)/ 5500
Maximum torque	in Nm at rpm	220/ 1450-4500
No. of cylinders, capacity	in cm ^{3}	4/ 1781
Compression		9,5 ± 0,5
Fuel		Super 95 RON[a)]/Normal 91 RON[b)]

a) **R**esearch-**O**ctane-**N**umber = Measure of the predetonation power of the petrol.
b) Slight power loss

Performance figures

Maximum speed	in km/h	216
Acceleration from 0-49.71 mi/h	in sec.	5,8
Acceleration from 0-100 km/h	in sec.	8,4

Weights

		3 doors	5 doors
Gross vehicle weight	in kg	1649	1698
Weight in working order (with driver)	in kg	1229	1278
Gross axle weight, front	in kg	902	940
Gross axle weight, rear	in kg	790	802
Permitted roof load	in kg	75	75

Trailer weights

With no brakes, gradients up to 12%	600
With brakes, gradients up to 12%	1200

Engine oil capacity

Approximate engine oil capacity with oil filter change	4.3 litres

Petrol engine 1.8l 132 kW (180 bhp)

General engine data

Power output in kW (bhp)	rpm	132 (180)/5800
Maximum torque	in Nm at rpm	245/2000
No. of cylinders, capacity in cm^3		4/1781
Compression		9,5
Fuel		98 RON[a)] Super unleaded[b)]

a) **R**esearch-**O**ctane-**N**umber = Measure of the anti-detonation capacity of the petrol.
b) If the described fuel is not available then fuel conforming to the standard 95 RON lead free may be used.

Performance figures

Maximum speed	in km/h	229,7
Acceleration from 0-80 km/h	in sec.	5,14
Acceleration from 0-100 km/h	in sec.	7,29

Weights

Gross vehicle weight	in kg	1649
Weight in working order (with driver)	in kg	1252
Gross axle weight, front	in kg	902
Gross axle weight, rear	in kg	790
Permitted roof load	in kg	75

Engine oil capacity

Approximate engine oil capacity with oil filter change	5.3 litres

Diesel engine 1.4 litre TDI 51 kW (70 bhp)

General engine data

Power output in kW (bhp)	rpm	51 (70)/ 4000
Maximum torque	in Nm at rpm	195/2200
No. of cylinders, capacity	in cm^3	3/1422
Compression		19,5 ± 0,5
Fuel		Min 51 CN[a)]

a) **C**etane-**N**umber (cetane index) = Measure of the combustion power of the diesel

Performance figures

Maximum speed	in km/h	166
Acceleration from 0-49.71 mi/h	in sec.	9,6
Acceleration from 0-100 km/h	in sec.	14,8

Weights

		3 doors	5 doors
Gross vehicle weight	in kg	1620	1644
Weight in working order (with driver)	in kg	1181	1206
Gross axle weight, front	in kg	890	897
Gross axle weight, rear	in kg	775	795
Permitted roof load	in kg	75	75

Trailer weights

With no brakes, gradients up to 12%	600
With brakes, gradients up to 12%	1000

Engine oil capacity

Approximate engine oil capacity with oil filter change	3,8 litres

Diesel engine 1.4 litre TDI 59 kW (80 bhp)

General engine data

Power output in kW (bhp)	rpm	59 (80)/ 4000
Maximum torque	in Nm at rpm	195/ 2200
No. of cylinders, capacity	in cm^3	3/ 1492
Compression		19,5 ± 0,5
Fuel		Min 51 CN[a)]

[a)] **C**etane-**N**umber (cetane index) = Measure of the combustion power of the diesel

Performance figures

Maximum speed	in km/h	176
Acceleration from 0-49.71 mi/h	in sec.	8,7
Acceleration from 0-100 km/h	in sec.	12,9

Weights

		3 doors	5 doors
Gross vehicle weight	in kg	1620	1644
Weight in working order (with driver)	in kg	1181	1206
Gross axle weight, front	in kg	890	897
Gross axle weight, rear	in kg	775	795
Permitted roof load	in kg	75	75

Trailer weights

With no brakes, gradients up to 12%	600
With brakes, gradients up to 12%	1000

Engine oil capacity

Approximate engine oil capacity with oil filter change	3,8 litres

Diesel engine 1.9 litre TDI 74 kW (100 bhp)

General engine data

Power output in kW (bhp)	rpm	74 (100)/ 4000
Maximum torque	in Nm at rpm	240/ 1800 - 2400
No. of cylinders, capacity	in cm^3	4/ 1896
Compression		19
Fuel		Min 51 CN[a)]

a) **C**etane-**N**umber (cetane index) = Measure of the combustion power of the diesel.

Performance figures

Maximum speed	in km/h	190
Acceleration from 0-49.71 mi/h	in sec.	7,4
Acceleration from 0-100 km/h	in sec.	10,8

Weights

		3 doors	5 doors
Gross vehicle weight	in kg	1658	1682
Weight in working order (with driver)	in kg	1219	1244
Gross axle weight, front	in kg	920	926
Gross axle weight, rear	in kg	784	804
Permitted roof load	in kg	75	75

Trailer weights

With no brakes, gradients up to 12%	600
With brakes, gradients up to 12%	1200

Engine oil capacity

Approximate engine oil capacity with oil filter change	4.3 litres

Diesel engine 1.9 litre TDI 96 kW (131 bhp)

General engine data

Power output in kW (bhp)	rpm	96(131)/ 4000
Maximum torque	in Nm at rpm	310/ 1900
No. of cylinders, capacity	in cm^3	4/ 1896
Compression		19
Fuel		Min 51 CN[a)]

a) **C**etane-**N**umber (cetane index) = Measure of the combustion power of the diesel.

Performance figures

Maximum speed	in km/h	208
Acceleration from 0-49.71 mi/h	in sec.	6,4
Acceleration from 0-100 km/h	in sec.	9,3

Weights

		3 doors	5 doors
Gross vehicle weight	in kg	1675	1693
Weight in working order (with driver)	in kg	1249	1252
Gross axle weight, front	in kg	935	940
Gross axle weight, rear	in kg	783	810
Permitted roof load	in kg	75	75

Trailer weights

With no brakes, gradients up to 12%	600
With brakes, gradients up to 12%	1200

Engine oil capacity

Approximate engine oil capacity with oil filter change	4.3 litres

Diesel engine 1.9 TDI 118 kW

General engine data

Power output in kW (bhp)	rpm	118 (160)/3750
Maximum torque	in Nm at rpm	330/2000
No. of cylinders, capacity in cm^3		4/1896
Compression		18,5
Fuel[a)]		Min 51 CN[b)]

a) **BIODIESEL is NOT** suitable as fuel for this engine.

b) **C**etane-**N**umber (cetane index) = Measure of the combustion quality of diesel

Performance figures

Maximum speed	in km/h	220,2
Acceleration from 0-80 km/h	in sec.	5,25
Acceleration from 0-100 km/h	in sec.	7,6

Weights

Gross vehicle weight	in kg	1675
Weight in working order (with driver)	in kg	1290
Gross axle weight, front	in kg	935
Gross axle weight, rear	in kg	783
Permitted roof load	in kg	75

Engine oil capacity

Approximate engine oil capacity with oil filter change[a)]	5 litres

a) Only use engine oil 0W-30 that complies with the standard VW 506 01 or VW 507 00.

Dimensions and capacities

Dimensions		
Length, width	3,953 mm/ 1,698 mm	
Height at kerb weight	1,441 mm	
Front and rear projection	931 mm/ 662mm	
Wheelbase	2,460 mm	
Turning circle	10.54 m	
Track width[a)]	**Front**	**Rear**
	1,435 mm	1,424 mm
	1,419 mm	1,408 mm
Capacities		
Fuel tank	45 litres, reserve 7 litres.	
Windscreen washer fluid container with headlight washer	2 l/ 4.5 l	
Tyre pressure		
Summer-grade tyres: The correct tyre pressure can be seen on the sticker on the inside of the tank flap. **Winter tyres:** The pressure of these tyres is the same as the summer tyre pressure plus 0.2 bar.		

a) This data will change depending on the type of wheel rim.

Index

A

ABS 148
Warning lamp 64
Accessories 171
Accumulation of soot in the particulate filter of diesel engines
Indicator 66
Acoustic signal 16
Acoustic warning 132
Adjustable service interval display 58
Adjusting simple headlights
driving on the left 154
driving on the right 154
Adjusting the height of the seat belt 17
Air conditioning system
Climatronic 125
General notes 128
Air conditioning* 122
Air outlets 121
Air recirculation
Semi-automatic air conditioning 124
Air recirculation mode
Climatronic 127
Airbag covers 32
Airbag system 27
Curtain airbags 37
Front airbags 30
Side airbags 33
Warning lamp 28
Airbags
Care 29
Disposal 29
Safety notes 29
Alarm system
Switching off 81
Alterations to the vehicle 171
Alternator
Warning lamp 62
Ambient temperature display 55, 57
Anti-freeze 186
Anti-lock brake system 148
Warning lamp 64
Anti-theft alarm system 80
Switching off 81
Anti-theft wheel bolts 206
Aquaplaning 197
Atermic windscreen* 100
Automatic anti-dazzle interior mirror*
Activating the anti-dazzle function 101
Deactivating anti-dazzle function 101
Automatic car washes 163
Automatic gearbox 137
Instructions for driving 139
Kick-down feature 139
Selector lever positions 138
Automatic wiper/wash function for the rear window 99
Auxiliary audio input connector: AUX-IN 115

B

Ball coupling 159
BAS 147
Battery
Changing 194
Charging 194
Winter conditions 193
Belt tension device
Disposal 25
Warning lamp 28
Belt tension devices 25
Biodiesel 178
Bonnet 181
Boot* 96, 228
Brake assist system 147
Brake fluid 191
Changing 192
Brake pads 151, 152
Brake servo 147, 152
Brake system 191
Warning lamp 65
Brakes 152
Braking distance 152

Bulb changes
general notes 217
Buzzer 94, 132

C

Car care
Exterior 163
Car care products 162
Car phone 172
Car washes 163
Catalytic converter 152
Central locking 70
Automatic speed dependent locking and unlocking system* 72
Emergency unlocking system 73
Locking system for involuntary unlocking . . 72
Selective unlocking system* 72
Unlocking system* 72
Central locking button
Central locking 73
unlocking 73
Cetane number 178
Change lamps
dipped headlight lamp 219
Changing bulbs
rear light units on the boot: accessing the rear light bulb 225
Changing gear
See Manual gearbox 136
Changing lamps
interior light and reading light 227
rear light units on the boot: access to the rear light 224
changing lamps
rear lights on frame 226
Changing the lamps
glove box light* 227
indicator lights 222
main beam lights 220
Main headlight lamps 218
number plate light 226
side beam lights 221
Side indicator lights 224
Changing windscreen wiper blades 189
Chassis number 236
Checking 194
Checking battery electrolyte level 194
Checking engine oil level 184
Child safety 42
Child seat 44
Categorisation in groups 44
Group 1 45
Group 2 45
Group 3 45
Groups 0 and 0+ 44
Safety notes 43
Securing 47
Child seats
ISOFIX and Toptether system 48
on the front passenger seat 28
Cigarette lighter 114
Cleaning alloy wheels 167
Cleaning and caring for your vehicle 162
Cleaning chrome 166
Cleaning cloth seat covers 169
Cleaning dash panel 169
Cleaning engine compartment 168
Cleaning fabric trim 169
Cleaning leather 169
Cleaning plastic parts 169
Cleaning seat belts 170
Cleaning steel wheels 167
Cleaning windows 165
Cleaning wooden trim 169
Climatronic
automatic mode 126
controls 125
General notes 128
manual mode 127
Clock 54
Cockpit 51
Connector for Apple iPod 115
Control
Light switches 90
wing mirrors 102
Control lamps 60
Control lighting 51
Controls
Electric windows 84

Convenience closing
Sliding/tilting roof 88
Windows 86
Convenience opening
Windows 86
Coolant 186, 187
Coolant Level 187
Coolant level
warning light 63
Coolant Loss 187
Coolant temperature
Display 53
Safety instructions 64
Correct adjustment of front head restraints 12
Cruise control system 142
Curtain airbags 37
Description 37
Function 38
Safety notes 38

D

Danger of fitting a child seat on the front passenger seat 28
Diesel 178
Diesel engine
Winter driving 179
Diesel engine particulate filter* 153
Differential lock 150
Differential lock fault (EDL)
warning lamp 67
Digital clock 54
Dipped headlights 90
Disabling front passenger airbag
Safety notes 41
Disabling the airbag
Disabling front passenger airbag 40
Displays in the Multi-function display
Memory displays 56
Door lock cylinders 166
Door release lever 51
Doors
Childproof locks 74
Unlocking and locking 70
Drive wheels traction control system 148
Driving
Driving abroad 153
With a trailer 158, 159
Driving abroad 153
Headlights 154
Driving economically 160
Driving safety 8
Driving with respect for the environment 160
Duplicate keys 77
Dust filter 128
Dynamic headlight range control 91

E

EDL 150
EDS
Warning lamp 64
Electrical sockets 114
Electrohydraulic steering
warning lamp 62
Electronic differential lock 150
Warning lamp 64
Electronic immobiliser 67, 133
Electronic stabilisation program 149
Electronic stabilisation programme 66
Description 131
Warning lamp 132
Electronic stabilisation programme (ESP)
warning lamp 66
Emission control system
warning lamp 65
Engine
Running in 151
Engine compartment
Working in the engine compartment 179
Engine coolant 186
Engine fault
warning lamp 63
Engine management
Warning lamp 63
Engine oil 182
Changing 185
Checking level 184
Oil properties 183
Specifications 182
Topping up 185
Engine oil dipstick 184

Engine oil pressure
Warning lamp 67
Environmental tip
Avoiding pollution 177
ESP 66, 149
Exhaust gasses purification system 152
Exterior mirrors 165
External aerial 172

F

Floor mats 14
Fog lights 90
Front airbags 30
Description 30
Function 31
Safety notes 33
Front ashtray 113
Front cup holder* 112
Front interior light 95
Front passenger airbag deactivation 40
Front reading light 95
Front seat adjustment
Lumbar support 107
Fuel
Diesel 178
Petrol 177
Fuel level
Indicator 54
Fuel reserve 64
Fuel Tank
Opening the fuel tank flap 176
Fuel tank
See Fuel reserve 64
Fuses 211

G

G 12 186
Gear shift pattern 136
General overview of the engine compartment 240
Glove compartment 110
Glow plug system 135
warning lamp 63

H

Handbrake 141
Warning lamp 65, 141
Hazard warning lights 92
head restraints
Adjusting 105, 106
adjustment of the head restraint angle . . . 106
Removing 106
Headlight flasher 94
Headlight range control 91
Headlights 90
Driving abroad 154
Fog lights 90
Washer system 100
Heated front seats 108
Heating and ventilation 119
Heating system 120
High pressure cleaners 164
Horn 51
How to jump start: description 229

I

Identification number 236
Ignition key 132
Ignition lock 132
Indicator lights
indication lamp 63
Instrument and switch lighting 91
Instrument lighting 51
Instrument panel 51
Instruments 52
Intermittent wipe, windscreen 97
ISOFIX and Toptether system 48

J

Jump leads 228
Jump-starting 228

K

Key tab 76
Keys 76

L

Lights 90
Load compartment
See Luggage compartment 15
Locks 166
Luggage compartment 15, 116
See also Luggage compartment 15
Luggage compartment cover 117

M

Main beam 94
Main beam headlights
Indicator lamp 64
Main headlight lamps 218
Manual gearbox 136
Manual heating 120
controls 119
Manual heating system
Defrosting the windscreen 120
Demisting the windscreen and side windows 120
MFD 55
Mileage display 58
Mirrors
courtesy mirror 96
Interior mirror 101
Wing mirrors 102
Mobile phone 172
Modifications 171
Multi-function display 55

N

Number of seats 16

O

Observations 153
Octane number 177
Oil 182
Oil change 185
Oil properties 183
One-touch opening and closing
Electric windows 85
Opening and locking 83
Overview
Control lamps 60
Instrument panel 51
Instruments 52
Warning lamps 60

P

Paintwork
Polishing 165
Waxing 165
Parking 141
Parking lights 94
Parts 171
Passage of water in Cupra version 151
Pedals 14
Petrol 177
Trips to foreign countries 153
Petrol additives 177
Petrol engines, starting 133
Physical principles of a frontal collision 18
Plastic key tab 76
Plastic parts 165
Pollen filter 128

R

Radio frequency remote control
Changing the battery 79
Radio wave remote control 78
Rain sensor* 98
Rear cup holder* 113
Rear fog lamp
indicator lamp 90
Rear seat bench 109
Rear seats,
folding down 109
Rear window heating
Heating element wires 166
Rear window wiper 99
Rear-view mirror 101
Rearview mirrors 101
Refuelling 176

Remote control key
Buttons 78
Synchronising 79
Removing and fitting the wheel 208
Repairs
Airbags 29
Replacement keys 77
Replacing lamps
fog lights 223
Rev counter 53
Reverse gear
Manual gearbox 136
RME fuel (biodiesel) 178
Roll-back function
Sliding/tilting roof 89
Windows 86
Roof aerial* 172
Roof carrier* 118
Rubber seals 166
Running in
Brake pads 151
Engine 151
Tyres 151
Running in tyres 151

S

Safe driving 7
Safety 8
Safety equipment 7
Safety instructions
Coolant temperature 64
Safety notes
Belt tension devices 25
Curtain airbags 38
Disabling front passenger airbag 41
Front airbags 33
Side airbags 36
Using child seats 43
Using seat belts 20
Safety system- safe 71
Seals 166
Seat adjustment 104, 107
Seat belt position
Pregnant women 23
Seat belts 23
Seat belt release 24
Seat belt warning lamp 16
Seat belts 16
adjustment 22
Incorrectly fastened 25
Not worn 19
Safety notes 20
Warning lamp 16
Seat belts protect 20
Seat heating 108
Seats 16
Selective opening* 72
Semiautomatic air conditioning
controls 122
Shoes 14
Side airbags 33
Description 33
Function 35
Safety notes 36
Side lights 90
Sitting position
Driver 9
Front passenger 10
Incorrect sitting position 13
Passengers 11
Sitting position, occupants 9
Sliding/tilting roof 87
Snow chains 200, 239
Spare wheel* 202
Spares 171
Speedometer 54
Starting Petrol engines 134
Starting the engine 133, 134
After the fuel tank has been run dry 135
Steam cleaners 164
Steering 130
Steering lock 132
Steering wheel controls 68
Steering wheel height adjustment 130
Stowage
frnt right seats 111
Stowage compartment
Front passenger side 110
Sun visors 96
Sunroof 87

Sunroof blind
Sliding/tilting roof 88
Switch
Hazard warning lights 92
Rear window heating 91
Switches
Electric windows 84
Sliding/tilting roof 87
Switching off the engine 135

T

Tailgate 83
Tank
fuel level 54
reserve indicator 54
tank capacity 54
TCS 148
TCS (Traction control system)
Warning lamp 66
The danger of not using the seat belt 19
Tightening torque of wheel bolts 239
Tools 201
Towing 231
Towing a trailer 158, 238
Towing bracket 159
Towing bracket, fitting 174
Towing eye 231
Tow-starting 231
Traction control system
warning lamp 66
Trailer turn signals
Indicator lamps 67
Warning lamp 94
Trailer weights 238
Trips, checklist 8
Turn signals 93
Warning lamp 63, 94
Two-way radio 172
Type plate 236
Tyre Mobility-System (Tyre repair kit) 203
Tyre pressure 196
Tyre pressures 238
Tyre repair kit 203, 209
Tyre-Mobility-System (Tyre repair kit) 209
Tyres and wheels
Dimensions 197
Tyres service life 196
Tyres tread depth 197
Tyres with directional tread pattern 195

U

Underbody sealant 168
USB connection* 116

V

Vehicle battery 193
Vehicle data 236
Vehicle identification data 236
Vehicle identification number 236
Vehicle interior heating or cooling system . . . 123
Vehicle paint
Car care products 162
Vehicle tools
Storage 201
Vehicle wallet storage 110
vent wings* 87
Ventilation 120
Ventilation slits 15
Volumetric sensor*
Activation 81
Deactivation 81

W

Warning lamp 28
Warning lamps 60
Warning triangle 116
Washer fluid 188
Washing by hand 163
Washing the vehicle 163
Washing with high pressure cleaners 164
Water in the windscreen washer tank 188
Wear indicators 197
Wheel bolts 206, 239
Torque 198
Wheel change 204
Wheel trims 205
Wheels 195, 238
Why assume the correct sitting position? 27

Why should head restraints be correctly adjusted? 12
Why wear seat belts? 16, 18
Why wear seatbelts? 27
Windows 84
Windscreen 100
Windscreen defrosting 120
Windscreen wiper blades
Cleaning 166
Windscreen wipers 97
Changing blades 189
Changing the rear blade 190
Winter driving
Diesel engine 179
Winter tyres 199
Wiper/wash automatic function 97
Working in the engine compartment 179

SEAT S.A. is permanently concerned about continuous development of its types and models. For this reason we ask you to understand, that at any given time, changes regarding shape, equipment and technique may take place on the car delivered. For this reason no right at all may derive based on the data, drawings and descriptions in this current handbook.

All texts, illustrations and standards in this handbook are based on the status of information at the time of printing. Except for error or omission, the information included in the current handbook is valid as of the date of closing print.

Re-printing, copying or translating, whether total or partial is not allowed unless SEAT allows it in written form.

SEAT reserves all rights in accordance with the "Copyright" Act.

All rights on changes are reserved.

This paper has been manufactured using bleached non-chlorine cellulose.

© SEAT S.A. - Reprint: 15.04.07

Inglés (02.07) (GT9)

SEAT

auto emoción